

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO



3 1761 00399713 7



A GRAMMAR
OF THE
SOMALI LANGUAGE

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS WAREHOUSE,

C. F. CLAY, MANAGER.

London: AVE MARIA LANE, E.C.

Glasgow: 50, WELLINGTON STREET.



Leipzig: F. A. BROCKHAUS.

New York: THE MACMILLAN COMPANY.

Bombay and Calcutta: MACMILLAN AND CO., LTD.

[All Rights reserved.]

A GRAMMAR
OF THE
SOMALI LANGUAGE

WITH EXAMPLES
IN
PROSE AND VERSE

AND AN ACCOUNT OF THE
YIBIR AND MIDGAN DIALECTS

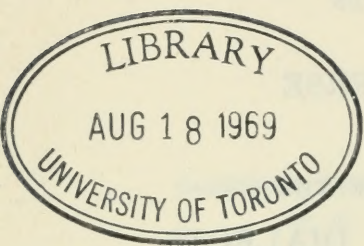
BY

J. W. C. KIRK, B.A.,

KING'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE,
LIEUTENANT, DUKE OF CORNWALL'S LIGHT INFANTRY,
AND 6TH (SOMALILAND) BATTALION, KING'S AFRICAN RIFLES

CAMBRIDGE
AT THE UNIVERSITY PRESS

1905



PJ
2532
K57
1905

Cambridge:

PRINTED BY JOHN CLAY, M.A.

AT THE UNIVERSITY PRESS.

S.B.N. — GB: 576.11490.1

Republished in 1969 by Gregg International Publishers Limited
Westmead, Farnborough, Hants., England

Printed in Holland

PREFACE.

THERE are but few people who have made any serious study of the many and interesting tongues of that part of the African Continent in which the Somali race has grown up. Our knowledge of the Somali language is due to the labours of Rigby, Hunter, and Larajasse and Sampont. As this is not a written language, great praise is due to those who first grappled with the difficulty of reducing the speech to writing. This has now been done so satisfactorily that I myself have lately carried on a successful correspondence with an educated Somali in his native tongue, using the spelling and orthography of the present book. Schleicher's work is rather a philological treatise on the language, gathered largely from isolated individuals of the people, and not from practical acquaintance with the race in their own country; but he is to be congratulated on having collected a number of stories which are a useful and important foundation to a Somali literature. Paulitschke's work is a purely comparative treatise on the three dialects, Somali, Gala, and Danakil, written from an ethnological point of view.

While serving with Somali troops during the campaigns of 1902-1904 against the Mullah, Mohammed Abdallah, I had the most favourable opportunities for a practical and wholesale study of the colloquial dialect of this people; and it seemed only right that results obtained from so intimate an acquaintance should not be left unrecorded, in spite of the many imperfections which must still exist in the record. The work done by others hitherto has been largely confined to the coast and to the mixed population which assembles at the sea-port towns; and it is but recently that any strangers except a few sportsmen have been able to dwell in the interior, and so to know and converse with the natives in their own homes and natural surroundings. The result is that it has now

been possible to correct and add to our knowledge, hitherto incomplete, on certain grammatical points, and to give their proper value to certain variations of speech. I refer especially to such peculiarities of the language as the Syntax of the Suffixes, Particles, Verbs, Concord of Nouns, and Compound Sentences. It is generally found to follow very clear and defined, though unwritten, rules, which are disturbed by very few exceptions.

In regard to Orthography, where I have differed from Schleicher and from Larajasse and Sampont, I have given the latter's corresponding signs in the Alphabet. In the spelling of words I have in most cases (subject to the orthographical variations) followed that used by Larajasse in his Dictionary, which leaves little room for improvement or addition. This book is indispensable to the student of Somali, or to anyone who wishes to examine the stories and songs given by Schleicher or myself. I have therefore not included a vocabulary, as such are necessarily deficient and frequently misleading.

In 1903 I published a small practical hand-book, *Notes on the Somali Language*, but this was written on lines totally different from those of the present *Grammar*. It was a compilation of notes which I had found useful to myself, and was intended to serve as an elementary guide to beginners, who had not the time to digest a more lengthy work. The orthography, the spelling, and the few grammatical rules, have since been entirely revised and corrected.

I desire to express my grateful appreciation of the assistance rendered me by Mr H. J. Edwards, Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Peterhouse, Cambridge, and by Mr R. R. Maret, Fellow and Tutor of Exeter College, Oxford, in revising the whole of the present work, in manuscript and proof: Professor E. G. Browne kindly suggested some improvements in the Introduction. I acknowledge with gratitude and admiration the promptness shown by the officials and staff of the Cambridge University Press, in completing against time a work involving unusual difficulties of composition and proof-reading.

J. W. C. K.

SEVENOAKS,
December, 1904.

CONTENTS.

PART I. ORTHOGRAPHY.

	PAGE
The Alphabet	1
Vowels	2
Diphthongs	4
Vowel changes	5
Consonants	6

PART II. ACCIDENCE.

THE PARTS OF SPEECH	10
A. SUBSTANTIVES	12
1. Classes of Nouns	12
2. Gender of Nouns	15
3. The Suffixes	16
(a) Linking Consonants	17
(b) Definite Article	18
(c) Demonstrative Adjective	19
(d) Possessive Pronominal Adjectives	20
(e) Interrogative Adjective	21
4. Plural of Nouns	22
5. Cases of Nouns	25
6. Numerals	27
7. Pronouns	29
(a) Simple Personal Pronouns	29
(b) Possessive "	32
(c) Demonstrative "	33
(d) Relative "	33
(e) Interrogative "	33
(f) Indefinite "	34

	PAGE
B. ADJECTIVES	35
1. Classes of Adjectives	35
(a) Radical	35
(b) Derivative	35
(c) Compound	36
2. Inflexions of Adjectives	37
(a) Radical	37
(b) Derivative	39
(c) Compound	41
3. Comparison of Adjectives	42
C. VERBS	42
1. Conjugation	42
(a) Moods and Tenses	42
(b) Affirmative Conjugation	44
(c) Negative „	48
(d) Interrogative „	52
(e) Negative-Interrogative Conjugation	52
2. Peculiarities and Irregular Verbs	53
(a) 1st Conjugation	53
Irreg. Verb, oll	57
(b) 2nd Conjugation „	57
Irreg. Verbs, imo, ogho, odo	62
(c) 3rd Conjugation	63
(d) Irreg. Verbs, aho, laho, wah	64
(e) The Passive Voice	70
3. Derivative Verbs	70
(a) Intensive	70
(b) Reflexive	71
(c) Attributive	71
(d) Causative	72
D. PARTICLES	73
1. Verbal	73
(a) Adverbial	73
(b) Prepositional	74
2. Conjunctive	75
(a) Introductory	75
(b) Conjunctive	75
E. ADVERBS, PREPOSITIONS, AND CONJUNCTIONS	76
F. INTERJECTIONS, AND SALUTATIONS	79

PART III. SYNTAX OF SIMPLE SENTENCES.

	PAGE
A. STRUCTURE OF A SIMPLE SENTENCE	81
1. Order of Words	81
2. The Particles wa, ba, ya	82
3. Simple Interrogative and Negative Sentences	86
4. Verbs of Existence	88
B. THE PARTS OF SPEECH	90
1. The Article	90
2. The Noun	92
(a) Cases	92
(b) Number	94
(c) Concord	95
3. The Adjective	98
(a) Order	98
(b) Comparison	99
(c) Similarity	101
4. The Numerals	102
5. The Pronouns and Pronominal Adjectives	103
(a) Persons	103
(b) Simple Personal Pronouns	103
(c) Suffixes	106
(d) Impersonal Pronouns	107
(e) Possessive Adjective	107
(f) Interrogative Pronouns and Adjectives	108
(g) Indefinite Pronouns and Adjectives	109
6. The Verb	111
(a) Moods and Tenses	111
(b) Persons	114
(c) Negative Tenses	115
7. The Particles	117
(a) Order	117
(b) Uses	117
(c) Adverbial Particles	118
(d) Prepositional „	119

PART IV. SYNTAX OF COMPOUND SENTENCES.

A. CO-ORDINATE SENTENCES	123
Conjunctive Particles	123
B. SUBORDINATE SENTENCES	124
1. General rules	125

	PAGE
2. Adjectival Sentences	125
3. Adverbial „	127
(a) Temporal and Locative	127
(b) Final	128
(c) Conditional	129
(d) Causal	130
(e) Concessive	131
4. Substantival Sentences	131
(a) Subjective	131
(b) Objective	132
5. Oratio Obliqua	133
APPENDIX I. Seasons, months, days	134
„ II. Money, weights, measures	136
„ III. Tribes and Sub-tribes	138

EXAMPLES OF PROSE AND VERSE.

PART I. SOMALI STORIES, AND NARRATIVE	141
„ II. TRANSLATIONS OF THE STORIES	160
„ III. SOMALI SONGS (with translations)	170

THE DIALECTS OF THE OUTCAST TRIBES, MIDGAN AND YIBIR.

1. Account of the two tribes	184
2. Observations on the Dialects	185
3. Examples of the Dialects :	
Midgan sentences	191
Yibir sentences	192
Yibir story of Mohammed Hanif	197
4. Vocabularies :	
Yibir-English and Midgan-English	200
Comparative vocabulary, English—Somali—Yibir—Midgan	207
INDEX	215

BIBLIOGRAPHY.

- RIGBY, Lieut. C. P., "On the Somaui Language"; Transactions of the Bombay Geographical Society, Vol. ix, 1849.
- HUNTER, Capt. F. M., A Grammar of the Somali Language; Bombay, 1880.
- CUST, R., The Modern Languages of Africa; London, Trübner & Co., 1883.
- SCHLEICHER, A. W., Die Somali-Sprache; Berlin, 1892.
- PAULITSCHKE, Dr Philipp, Ethnographie Nordost-Afrikas; Berlin, 1896.
- LARAJASSE and SAMPONT, Practical Grammar of the Somali Language; London, Kegan Paul, Trench, Trübner & Co., 1897.
- LARAJASSE, Somali-English and English-Somali Dictionary; London, Kegan Paul, Trench, Trübner & Co., 1897.
- SCHLEICHER, Dr A. W., Somali-Texte (edited by Leo Reinisch); Vienna and Leipzig, 1900.

These are the most important works upon the language, though other writers are also quoted by Paulitschke.

ERRATUM.

§ 15 (*b*). *for* warm, warming *read* warn, warning.

.

INTRODUCTION.

SOMALI is the language spoken by the inhabitants of the square tract of country, known as the Horn of Africa (*Regio Aromatifera* of the ancients), which lies between the French port of Djibouti, Cape Guardafui and the river Juba. This country was formerly inhabited by a people, now known as Gala¹, who have been steadily driven inland by Mohammedan propagandists, who call themselves Somali. The neighbours of the Somali are the Danakil on the north, the Abyssinians, speaking Amharic, on the north-west, and the retreating Gala on the west and south-west. The languages of the Somali and the Gala are quite distinct, and mutually unintelligible, but possess so many fundamental characteristics in common, that there is ample evidence of their close relationship, even if it can not be proved that modern Somali is actually derived from Gala. There has always been considerable trade between the inhabitants of Aden and Southern Arabia and those of the Somali coast, and the Semitic element in Somali is sufficient proof of the local tradition that the present Somali race had its origin in a Mohammedan colonisation from Southern Arabia.

If we compare the vocabularies of the three languages, Arabic, Gala and Somali, we find many words having a root common to all three, such as the Somali words, **aba** father, **wil** boy, **faras** horse.

The majority of words common to Arabic and Somali are found to be technical or legal terms, or names of utensils or articles of commerce not native to the country. These are obviously borrowed

¹ **Gai** (of which the plural is **Galo**) is the name used generally to denote infidels, i.e. those who are not Mohammedans, and may be used by Somalis, without any disrespect, to include English, Abyssinians or others as well as those former inhabitants who would not embrace the faith preached by the Mohammedan missionaries, and to whom the name is now specially applied.

direct from the Arabic and have no bearing on the relationship of the languages. But in a few Somali verbs the Arabic root can be recognised, such as, **ghad** takè, carry; **akhri** read; **ibi** sell, buy; **gajo** be hungry.

On the other hand a large number of words in ordinary use are common to Gala and Somali, but are not of Arabic origin. These have simple and elementary meanings, and include many verbs.

Such are,

arag	see	nin	man
eg	look	dīg	blood
jir	be	if	light
gal	enter	af	month
dùl	attack	arrab	tongue
	der	long	

The Somali numerals are common to Gala, except *one, six, ten* and *a hundred*, and are all quite different from the Arabic.

In regard to the structure of the language, the most striking features are the *Suffixes*, with their generic linking consonants, the use of the *Definite Article* and its concord with noun and adjective (the latter is comparable with the declension of the German adjective), the *Negative Conjugation* of verbs, and the *Particles*. In all these points Somali resembles Gala, but apparently has little or no resemblance to Arabic, except in the particles.

All three languages employ similar inflexions in the persons of the verb conjugation, but in the two former, as in Arabic, prefixes are not used, except in the five irregular Somali verbs.

Example,

wan imi	I came
wad timi	thou camest
wu yimi	he came
wei timi	she came
weinu nimi	we came

The regular forms being as follows :

wan shega	I tell
wad shegta	thou tellest
wu shega	he tells
wei shegta	she tells
weinu shegna	we tell

The Semitic element is also exemplified in the guttural and aspirate sounds, which correspond to the Arabic letters Ghain, 'Ain, and Ha; and in the form and concord of plural nouns, which largely resemble the Arabic broken plurals.

The Bantu languages, which are prefix languages, seem to have nothing in common with Somali, either in construction or vocabulary.

There are certain slight variations in the speech of different tribes, which almost constitute different dialects. The most notable are the Ishhak, Dolbohanta, Mijjertein and the Esa and Gadabursi.

For instance :

	Ishhak	Dolbohanta
camel	aur	rati
road	dau	jid
go	tag	ad
the saddles	koryashi	koryalki

A Dolbohanta will say **wa dònahaya** (I want), pronounced by the Ishhak as **wa dòneya** or **wa dònaya**. "I want" is translated by **wa dòneya** in Bari, **wa dònaya** in Galbed

Practically all the men I have served with have belonged to the Ishhak section, and in this book it is the everyday speech of these people which is presented, while words and forms which are not familiar to them, but are used by Dolbohanta and others, have been avoided. The Ishhak almost entirely inhabit the British Protectorate, and their speech may therefore be taken by Englishmen as the standard form of the language.

Within the Ishhak there are slight variations again in accent, phrases and idioms, of no great importance. These depend chiefly on geographical distribution.

In the East (*Bari*) the common forms for the personal pronoun are **ban**, **bad**, **bu**, etc., while in the West (*Galbed*) they are represented by **yan**, **yad**, **yu**, etc.

The *Midgan* and *Yibir* dialects are quite apart. These are dialects spoken by two outcast and homeless tribes living among the Somalis, and are now published for the first time, having hitherto been kept a secret even from the Somalis themselves. They are discussed in full at the end of this book.

Finally, with regard to speaking the language, the mode of speech is that of all Eastern people, like the language of the Bible. Sentences are split up into strings of short simple remarks, with numerous copulative particles, and expressions meaning, "and so," "and then," "he said," etc. In a narrative, after each remark the speaker pauses, when the listener is expected to answer with some suitable expression of assent, such as **Kôdi**, or **Haiye**.

Correct pronunciation is most important, and as there are no definite rules for the accentuation of syllables I have had to use accents freely all through the book. The Somali is not a polite person, and though extremely good-natured he is quite outspoken, and has no hesitation in ridiculing one's false quantities or concords, that is to say, if one's efforts are at all recognisable to him. He expects a high standard of accuracy, chiefly because he is unaccustomed to hearing a European endeavour to grapple with his language, but this has the advantage of not allowing the stranger to form too favourable an idea of his own skill.

PART I. ORTHOGRAPHY.

1. In reducing the Somali language to writing, we are faced by the fact that there is no written language. Many educated Somalis write Arabic, but, so far as the writer is aware, they have never attempted to write their own language either in Arabic or any other characters. Nor would it be possible to employ the Arabic characters to represent Somali sounds. The list of Arabic consonants is too elaborate, whilst the three vowel-signs are insufficient, a great variety of vowel sounds being an important peculiarity of the Somali language.

According to Hunter the alphabetical signs for Urdu contain all the necessary elements, but he and all others have agreed to adopt the Roman characters, for obvious reasons.

The alphabet that is used here, so far as it is applicable, is that recommended by the Royal Geographical Society in "Hints to Travellers," with the addition of two extra signs for the Arabic Aine (ع) and the cerebral d (Sanskrit ढ), which are represented respectively by the inverted comma ', and **d**, as in the grammar published by Larajasse and Sampont. The double **hh** is employed to represent the Arabic Ha (ح). Accents are also employed freely to express the different values of the vowels.

2. THE ALPHABET.

<i>ă, a, à</i> = Arabic "fatha," or ا	<i>g</i> = Arabic ق
<i>b</i> " ب	<i>gh</i> " غ (L. & S. h)
<i>d</i> " د, ذ	<i>h</i> " ز
<i>ḍ</i> Sanskrit ढ	<i>hh</i> " ح
(half d, half r)	(L. & S. h)
<i>e, è</i> as in Latin languages	<i>i, ì</i> " ي
<i>f</i> = Arabic ف	<i>j</i> " ج

<i>k</i>	=	Arabic ك	<i>u, ù</i>	=	Arabic و
<i>kh</i>		” خ	<i>w</i>		” و
<i>l</i>		” ل	<i>y</i>		” ي
<i>m</i>		” م	‘		” ع
<i>n</i>		” ن			
<i>o, ò, ó</i>		” ’			
<i>r</i>		” ر			
<i>s</i>		” س			
<i>sh</i>		” ش (Schl. š)			
<i>t</i>		” ت			

Diphthongs.

*ai**ei**au**oi*

There is no doubt a double *l* (according to Hunter, the Sanskrit ल), but it is so seldom used (as in **lehh** = six) that it is not necessary to have a separate sign. The same remark applies to the Arabic ل, which occurs in some Somali words, and is commonly used in Yibir.

VOWELS.

3. The following accents are used to represent the different values of vowels:—

˘ and ˆ are only used with special forms of *a* and *o* respectively.

The grave accent, ` , is used to express the long drawn sounds of each vowel.

The acute accent, ´ , is only used to denote the syllable upon which the accentuation should fall, and may therefore vary in the same word in different contexts or forms ; it is to be understood that this accent does not alter the length or value of the vowel in any way.

4. **a** corresponds to the Arabic “fatha” and has a nondescript sound, as the *u* in “bun,” “sun,” or the *a* in “balloon” :

badan	many
ban	plain
dab	fire

ă is pronounced like *a* in “rat,” “ham,” but is not a common sound :

wanăksan	good
răg	men
kăleh	other
shălei	yesterday

à is long as in "father," "mast" :

sàn skin
dâr stone building

e is pronounced like e in "pen," "fell" :

hebel a certain man
shég tell

Before cerebral ð this has almost the value of u, as in English "fur." Example, hed tie.

è is like the vowels of "fate," "weight," "fare" :

adèr uncle
habèn night
gènyo mare
gèd tree

i is short as in "pin" :

mid one
illin entrance

Care must be taken to pronounce i with exactly this value before r, as y in "tyranny," and not as in English "fir" :

bir iron
jir be

î is like ee in "feel," "seem" :

îd sand
dîr trees
lîn orange

o is short as in "on," "cot" :

kol time
'oll army
ghor write

ò is quite long as in "foal," "sole" :

dòn wish
gòb a kind of fruit
gòl lioness

ô This is represented by Larajasse and Sampont by *ow*, which, however, seems liable to confusion with the English diphthong

ou. It has a very long drawn out hollow sound like a gasping "Ohh!"

dô	near
ilô	forget
madô	black

u is pronounced as in "full," "put" :

Before r it must retain the same value and not be pronounced like the English "fur."

gur	pick up
kun	thousand
kulul	warm

ù is long and full as *oo* in "fool," "rule" :

gùr	start to march
fùd	soup
fùl	ride

5. DIPHTHONGS.

ai is pronounced as in "aisle," or "fire" :

ain	sort, kind
------------	------------

ei is pronounced like "feign," but in this case the *i* is sometimes almost heard :

weidi	ask
samei	make

Note. In many words it is hard to distinguish whether the diphthong is the one or the other of these, the common *a*, or "fatha," and *e* being so much alike when preceding another vowel. Thus this work differs from that of other writers in that the past terminations of verbs, and the Continuative tense inflexions are spelt with an *e*, instead of *a*, the former being to the writer's ear distinctly the sound produced by the tribes he has been in contact with.

au is like the English diphthong in "how," "hour," but with a round full sound almost like "ao" :

aur	camel
------------	-------

oi very seldom occurs, but where it does it is exactly the same as in English :

hoi!	an exclamation
-------------	----------------

Note. The above diphthongs may occur before another vowel, in which case *i* becomes *y*, and *u* becomes *w* :

laya	slay ye (lai-a)
wa tégeya	I am going (tegei-a)
wa samèya	I make (samei-a)
biláwa	dagger (bilau-a)
goya	cut ye (goi-a)

6. VOWEL CHANGES.

When two vowels occur in succession they may both be pronounced separately and distinctly, in which case the second vowel is marked with the diæresis, " :

aï	curse
baän	badtempered
eï	dog

More commonly the hiatus is avoided (*a*) by elision, (*b*) by the use of the semi-vowels *y*, *w*, (*c*) by the insertion of some consonant.

(*a*) Elision is the suppression of one of the vowels, and takes place especially before the pronouns which are attached as suffixes to the preceding word.

Examples, gorti-u becomes gortu when he
hadi-an „ hadan if I

(*b*) *y* is used instead of *i*, or after *i*, when preceding a vowel.

Examples, wa samèi-a becomes wa samèya I make
wa sì-a „ wa siya I give

(*c*) Consonants are inserted in the case of certain inflexions.

Examples, abi-hi for abi-i the father
madô-ba „ madô-a the black
wa ilô-ba „ ilô-a I forget

When *a* is followed by *i*, it is very frequently changed into *e*, whether a consonant is between or not.

Examples, ka' wake, awaken ke'i
la i becomes lei.

sa' cow, si'i, or su'u (for sa'i, sa'u) the cow
wan taga I go, wan tegeya I am going
aba father, abihi, or abuhu (for abahi, abahu)
the father

7. CONSONANTS.

The consonants are sounded as follows :

Faucals (' , h, hh).

' (aine) is an Arabic sound caused by a sudden contraction of the glottis in place of a hiatus. It is treated like a consonant in all rules as to inflexions, etc. :

'ab	drink
maga'	name
la'ag	money
b'e'id	oryx
'id	sand
lo'	cows
'oll	army
'ur'ur	forearm

In order to learn the correct pronunciation compare the above with

aba	father
nâg	woman
baan	badtempered
beid	egg
idlad	end, completion
lohh	plank
urur	assembly
ulul	growl

Note. The Aine is a hard letter, and must be followed by the hard form of any other class of consonant in inflexion :

wa ka'da	she gets up
for ka'ta	

h is like the English *h* in "hit," but is scarcely sounded when at the end of a word :

harag	sheep-skin
gesiah	brave

hh is the long drawn Arabic consonant ; in the middle, or end, of a word it is sounded almost as a whole syllable, but is hardly different from *h* at the beginning of a word :

dehh	middle	(dehh(e))
libahh	lion	(libahh(a))
lehhda	the six	(lehh(e)da)
hhun	bad	

Gutturals (g, gh, k, kh).

g is always hard as in "go."

It most nearly resembles the Arabic ق :

ga'an	hand
gèl	camels

gh is the Arabic "ghain," غ, and must be learned by ear :

ghad	carry
ghor	write
ghànso	bow

k is like the English *k* :

kàli	come here
hakama	bridle

kh is a softer guttural-aspirate than the ghain or **gh**, and more nearly corresponds to the Scotch *ch*, as in "loch," but is harder than this :

sandukh	box
akhal	house

Note. It is often difficult to distinguish between *gh* and *kh*, the former being softer, and the latter harder than in the true Arabic forms.

*Palatals*¹ (j, sh, y).

j is a hard *j*, as in English "journey," "John"²

ja'al	like
jòg	stand

sh is like the English, as in "shoot" :

shimbir	bird
shég	tell

¹ These are not found at the end of a word in Somali.

² There is no sound *ch*, as in "church," in Somali; the English sound is reproduced by the native as *j*.

y is like the English, as in "you" :

yer	small
blyo	water

Dentals (**t, d, ḍ, r, s, l, n**).

t as in English :

tuka	crow
tehh	shower of rain

ḍ as in English :

wadān	skin pail
durug	move

Note. At the end of a word *ḍ* is sounded nearly like *t* :

mid	one.
------------	------

ḍ is a cerebral letter, and, as mentioned above, is of Sanskrit origin.

In the middle of a word it has almost the sound of *r*, but at the beginning, or end, of a word it more nearly approaches *ḍ*.

It is formed by curling the tongue back and bringing it forward along the roof of the mouth :

āḍi	sheep
faḍi	sit
heḍ	tie
ḍan	all, complete

r is always pronounced distinctly, like the *r* of Latin languages, as in "arrow" :

ra'	accompany
bir	iron
shimbirtu	the bird

s as in English :

sān	skin
so'o	go on
hes	song

l as in English :

libahh	lion
līn	orange
filfil	pepper

n as in English :

nàg woman
mindì knife

Note. **l** and **t**, where they occur in inflexions or suffixes, become **sh**.

hashi the camel, for **hal-ti**
wa yesha thou doest, for **yel-ta**

Labials (**b, m, f, w**).

b as in English :

barbar youth
biláwa dagger
albab door

m as in English :

mòd think
dambe behind

f as in English :

af mouth
iftin light
áfar four

w as in English :

wlyil rhinoceros
walâl brother

PART II. ACCIDENCE.

THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

8. All languages cannot be arranged on exactly the same system, and, in the Somali Language, the arrangement and definitions which are applicable to the grammar of well-known tongues, such as English or Arabic, will not altogether hold good.

Somali is undoubtedly a simple and elementary language, in which the only true and fundamental parts of speech are

Substantive, Verb, Adjective, Particle,

and it is by various combinations or forms of these that the other generally recognised parts of speech are formed.

9. A *Substantive* is a word describing, or referring to, something which exists, or some object of thought, either material or immaterial.

A *Verb* is a word expressing thought, being, action, or the suffering of action, and affirms or predicates something of some person or thing.

These two parts of speech are complementary and essential one to the other, and in any form of speech both these elements must necessarily occur, unless it is tacitly agreed, to save unnecessary verbiage, that one or the other may be obviously understood from the context, and may be omitted from actual expression.

An *Adjective* is a word which describes or qualifies the object or thought represented by a substantive, according to any known idea of quality, such as colour, size, nature, etc.

A *Particle* is a word which has no meaning in itself and can only occur in conjunction with other parts of speech. It may qualify the

meaning of a verb, or it may be "Conjunctive," that is, it may connect, or act as a link between, two expressions or parts of speech.

10. Other parts of speech that occur in more advanced languages are, in Somali, all derived from substantives, or are represented by suffixes.

Substantives may be qualified

(i) according to place, context, possessor, etc., by

Suffixes, known as { Definite Article,
Demonstrative Adjective,
Possessive Pronominal Adjective,
Interrogative Adjective ;

(ii) according to number, by

Inflections.

They include,

(i) Nouns (actually descriptive of an object or idea).

(ii) Numerals¹ (expressing the abstract idea of a number).

(iii) Pronouns (words used to refer to a noun or numeral already expressed, or understood, to avoid lengthy and unnecessary repetition).

Note a. All substantives are recognisable by the fact that they are able to have attached to them the suffixes mentioned above, and may stand alone as Subject or Object to a Verb.

Note b. Nouns and numerals have no declension, nouns alone being inflected in the plural. Personal pronouns have an Objective (or Accusative) form as well as the Subjective (or Nominative).

In addition to the above, there are formed, by the use of a noun alone, or a noun combined with any of the other substantives, with or without suffixes or inflections, and with or without an adjective,

(iv) Adverbs (words expressing time, place or manner, relative to the action of a verb).

(v) Relative Conjunctions (words introducing expressions of the same value as the above).

(vi) Prepositions (words expressing the relationship of one substantive to another).

¹ These are undoubtedly treated as Substantives in Somali.

A. SUBSTANTIVES.

11. These will be dealt with in the order given in the classification above, but it is necessary first to describe the Noun itself, its Forms, and Gender, after which will follow the Suffixes, to be followed again by the Plural Inflexions.

The reason of this order will be seen on a perusal of the following pages, as the questions of gender and number are inextricably mixed with those concerning the form of the Suffixes.

1. *Classes of Nouns.*

12. Nouns are classified into Proper and Common.

'Proper' nouns are names of people or places.

The commoner and typical Somali men's names are, **Jàma**, **Fàrah**, **Hassan**, **Hussein**, **Mohammed**, **Mahhmud**, **Ahhmed**, **Àli**, **Omar**, **Nur**, **Liban**, **Égal**, **Duàleh**, **Abdallah**, **Abdi**, **Robleh**.

Nicknames are very common ; in fact nearly everyone, whether Somali or English, is always known by his friends by some nickname, such as, **Gurreh** left-handed, **Fàrùrah** hare-lipped, **Dunjog** active or "cute," **Bulàli** fair, **Timo-wein** long hair, **Awarah** one-eyed, **Galòs**, **Dèlowein**, etc., always referring to some feature or eccentricity, but without any idea of disrespect.

13. Common nouns are classed in various ways : according to their Nature they are *Concrete*, or *Abstract*,

according to their Derivation they are Radical, Derivative, or Borrowed,

according to their Gender they are Masculine, Feminine, or Common.

14. *Concrete* Nouns include the names of all animate or inanimate objects, or parts of them.

Nearly all of these are Radical words, or else are borrowed entirely from another language.

(i) *Animate* : **nin** man, **nàg** woman, **wil** boy,
gabađ girl, **libahh** lion, **faras** horse, **aur** camel,
shimbir bird.

They include collective words, as :

dad people, **räg** men, **dumar** women, **arür** children,
gël camels, **hòlo** flocks, **ghalab**, **alabo** baggage, kit.

Names of relations :

aba father, **hoyo** mother, **walál** brother or sister,
inan son, or daughter, **adèr** uncle.

(ii) *Inanimate* objects are :

wahh thing, **bir** iron, **ghori** wood, **dagahh** stone,
bür hill, **mìyi** jungle, **akhal** house.

15. *Abstract Nouns.*

(a) Many abstract nouns of action and sense are radical, in which case they are also used as intransitive verbs.

hadal talk, **yab** wonder, **dagàl** fight, **'ur** smell,
hàrad thirst, **hanòn** pain, **ai** curse, **gabei** chant,
ado rage.

(b) *Verb-nouns*, describing the action of a verb, are formed from the verb-root by the addition of certain terminations :

1st Class (ending in a consonant) add **-nin**, or **-in**.

2nd Class („ „ **-o**) „ **-d**.

3rd Class („ „ **-i**) „ **-s**, or **-n**.

1st Class.

dig	warm	dignin	warming
tòl	sew	tòlin	sewing, seam
ghor	write	ghorin	writing
bòd	jump	bòdin	jumping
sug	wait	sugnin	waiting

(Note : **fùl** ride **fùlan** riding.)

2nd Class.

so'ò	walk	so'od	walking
nokho	return	nokhod	return
garo	understand	garad	sense
bahso	escape	bahsad	escape
idlo	come to an end	idlad	end, completion

3rd Class.

weidi	ask	weidis	question
goi	cut	gois	cutting, cleft
si	give	sin	present
samei	make	samein	construction
safei	clean	safein	cleaning

(c) Abstract Nouns of *Quality* are derived from adjectives, or nouns, and have the following forms :

'ulusnimo	heaviness	from	'ulus	heavy
'ajisnimo	laziness	,,	'ajis	lazy
fulanimo	cowardice	,,	fulei	coward
nagnimo	womanliness	,,	nag	woman
hoyonimo	motherliness	,,	hoyo	mother
'adan	whiteness	,,	'ad	white
'asan	redness	,,	'as	red
weinan	largeness	,,	wein	large
adkan	hardness	,,	adag	hard
derer	length	,,	der	long
fudeid	lightness	,,	fudud	light
'uleis	weight	,,	'ulus	heavy
adeig	strength	,,	adag	hard, strong

(d) Other radical abstract nouns are those of *Quantity*, *Time*, and *Place*, some of which are used as Indefinite Pronouns.

in	some (quantity)	ghar	some (number)
gidi, kulli, daman	all, whole	gor, kol	time
malin, 'asho	day	mel, hag	place

16. *Borrowed* words are chiefly Arabic, many being common to all East African languages.

mes	table,	sa'ad	hour,	kursi	chair,	sandukh	box,
	bandukh	gun,	hukum	order,	askari	soldier	

In *albab* (door), the Somali has taken the Arabic definite article as well, but adds his own article to it :

albabki the door.

Verbs are very seldom borrowed, such as **safei** (clean).

English words are now becoming familiar and naturalised over the whole of our Protectorate, as,

kôd (coat), **tèbel** (table), **sord** (sword), **drabel** (trouble),
ketli (kettle), **kob** (cup).

2. Gender of Nouns.

17. There are no rules determining the gender of a Radical Noun, either according to its meaning or form. It must therefore be learned by practice in the case of each word. This however is not so difficult as it would appear, as the definite article is so much a part of the noun, and the gender is so clearly marked by it, that it is best to learn the definite article with the noun in each case. I shall, therefore, when quoting a noun, give the definite article, separated by a hyphen, as in

nin-ki man
nàg-ti woman.

This will imply that

nin = a man **nàg** = a woman
ninki = the man **nàgti** = the woman.

It will suffice here to say that all Feminine nouns are those which take the dental article, i.e. **-ti** or **-di**;

While all Masculine nouns are those which take a guttural article, i.e. **-ki**, **-gi**, **-hi**, or in some cases the vowel **-i**, alone.

In both cases the Suffix consists of two parts. The final vowel is the Article Suffix, the consonant is the Linking Consonant.

18. The Derivative and Borrowed Nouns do follow certain determinate rules in respect of gender.

Borrowed words are masculine :

mes-ki, **kùrsi-gi**, **hukum-ki**, **sandukh-i**, **albab-ki**, **tèbel-ki**,
kôd-ki, etc.

Exceptions, **sa'ad-di** hour } are feminine.
warkhâd-di letter }

19. Of Derivative Nouns,

Verbal Nouns in **-in** (1st and 3rd Classes) are Feminine :

dignin-ti, **sugnin-ti**, **samein-ti**, etc.

Verbal Nouns in **-d**, **-s** (2nd and 3rd Classes) are Masculine :

so'od-ki, **idlad-ki**, **goïs-ki**, etc.

Adjectival Nouns in **-nimo -an** are Feminine.

‘ajisnimo-di, weinan-ti.

Adjectival Nouns of other forms are Masculine.

derer-ki, ‘uleis-ki, etc.

20. Names of men and animals may have special forms for each gender :

Examples,

nin-ki	man, husband	nàg-ti	woman, wife
aba-hi	father	hoyo-di	mother
aur-ki	male camel	hal-shi¹	female camel
sanga-hi	stallion	gènyo-di	mare
wan-ki	ram	sabein-ti	ewe
orgi-gi	he-goat	ri-di	she-goat
àr-ki	lion	gol-shi¹	lioness

21. Some nouns are of common gender, and vary only in the form of the definite article.

inan-ki	son	inan-ti	daughter
walál-ki	brother	walál-shi¹	sister

3. *The Sufflaxes.*

22. The Sufflaxes consist of two parts, namely (1) a vowel termination, or syllable beginning with a vowel, and (2) a linking consonant, connecting the termination to the substantive, and denoting the gender of the word.

23. The following parts of speech are represented by Sufflaxes in Somali :

viz.

{	Definite Article (<i>the</i>)	-i	-a	or	-u.
	Demonstrative Adjective (<i>this; that</i>)	-an;	-as	or	-à.
	Possessive Pronominal Adjective.				
	(<i>my, thy, his, her</i>)	-ai	-à	-ls	-èd.
	(<i>our</i> (1 and 3), <i>our</i> (1, 2 and 3))				
	(<i>your, their</i>)	-aya	-èn	-ln	-òd.
	Interrogative Adjective (<i>what?</i>) ...	-e P			

¹ In Feminine nouns ending in *-l*, the final *l* and the *t* of the Article are transformed into *sh*; thus **hashi** the she-camel, for **halti**, **waláshi** for **walálti**.

ninki, ninka, or ninku	the man
ninkan	this man
ninkas or ninkā	that man
ninkai, ninkā, ninkis, &c.	my, thy, his, etc. man
ninke ?	what man ?

The above forms are constant, whether the noun qualified is in the Singular or Plural.

(a) *Linking Consonants.*

24. The Linking Consonants are peculiar to each noun, and conform to its gender and the final letter of the word.

25. *Masculine* words take the gutturals, **k, g, h.**

Nouns ending in any consonant, except **g**, or a gutt. aspirate, take **k**

„	„	-i or g	„	g
„	„	-a	„	h

Note i. Nouns ending in **-h, hh**, or a guttural aspirate, would logically be followed by **h**, but this additional aspirate is hardly to be detected by the ear, and need not therefore be written.

Note ii. With nouns ending in ‘ no linking consonant is required, unless it be another ‘, but this again the ear cannot detect.

Note iii. Where the noun ends in **a, -ah**, the **-a** is assimilated to the form of suffix vowel which follows, i.e. if the suffix is **-i**, the **a** becomes **i**, if **u**, it becomes **u**.

Examples,

(The suffix is here separated by a hyphen, but it must be remembered that it is not spoken as a separate word, and will not be so written in examples later.)

albab-ki	the door	harag-gi	the sheep-skin.
shabèl-ki	the leopard	ilig-gi	the tooth
sul-ki	the thumb	libahh-i	the lion (i)
san-ki	the nose	sandukh-i	the box (i)
af-ki	the mouth	maga'-i	the name (ii)
mlyi-gi	the jungle	muda'-i	the fork (ii)
askàri-gi	the soldier		

kòra	a saddle	the saddle	kòri-hi, kòra-ha, or kòru-hu (iii)
dayah	a moon	the moon	dayi-hi, daya-ha, or dayu-hu (iii)

and

(wáranleh	a spearman	the s.	wáranlihi, wáranlahá, wáranluhú
fardòleh	a horseman	the h.	fardòlihi, fardálaha, fardòluhu)

26. *Feminine* words take the dentals -t or -d.

Nouns ending in any consonant except d, or ', take -t.

„ „ -d, -i, -o, ', or an aspirate, „ -d.

Examples,

nàg-ti	the woman	laf-ti	the bone
làn-ti	the branch	miyid-di	the corpse
far-ti	the finger	sàlo-di	the dung
ga'an-ti	the hand	ghorahh-di	the sun
hal-shi	the she-camel	warákh-di	the letter
ri-di	the goat	Nogâl-shi	the Nogal

27. In many cases the linking consonant may be omitted, as has been noticed after aspirates, and '.

It is also omitted in certain words,

räg-i	the men
gèl-i	the camels .

with the simple Personal Pronouns,

an-i, an-a	I
ad-i, ad-a	thou, etc.

after some of the Possessive Pronominal suffixes,

akhal-kis-i	his house
has-kèd-a	her family
dad-kèn-i	our people

or after the Demonstrative suffix,

nin-kan-a	this man
aur-kas-i	that camel

(b) *The Definite Article.*

28. It is seen in § 23 that the Definite Article has three alternative forms, the use of which depends entirely on the context of the noun defined.

A short general rule is given here, but the question will be more fully dealt with under Syntax (§ 150, etc.).

“The horse” may be, **fāraski**, **fāraska**, or **fārasku**.

“The place” „ **meshi**, **mesha**, or **meshu**.

29. (i) **-i** is the most general form, and is used when **-a**, or **-u**, are not required.

(ii) **-a** is used in the following cases :

(1) when referring to a person or thing actually present in front of the speaker, and is very nearly equivalent to the demonstrative adjective (this), but must not be confounded with the demonstrative suffix **-ā** (that) ;

(2) when the noun is used possessively, adjectivally or adverbially.

Examples,

- | | | |
|-------|-------------------------|---|
| (1) | sandukha ghad | take the box (which you see) |
| | ninka ba òg | the man (i.e. he that is present) knows |
| | ninka ad árkesa | the man thou seest |
| (but, | ninki ad áraktei | the man thou sawest) |
| (2) | ákhalki sirkálka | the house of the officer |
| | nin magáloda | a man of the town |
| | galábta | this evening |

(iii) **-u** is used when referring to a well-known, or already mentioned, object or person.

Any definition is supposed to be unnecessary, and therefore **-u** is not employed if the noun is qualified by an adjective, nor is it used with the object of a sentence.

It may be represented in English by the use of “The” or capital letters.

- | | | |
|------------------|------------------|---|
| <i>Examples,</i> | Sirkálku | The Officer (as a soldier would refer to his company officer or Commandant) |
| | Wadádku | The Mullah (i.e. Mohammed Abdallah Hassán) |
| | ghorahhdu | the sun |
| | dayuhu | the moon |
| | ròbku | the rain |

(c) *The Demonstrative Adjective.*

30. The suffixes are,

-an	this
-as, or -ā	that

<i>Examples,</i>	fáras-kan	this horse
	fáras-kas	that horse
	nâg-tan	this woman
	gèd-kas	that tree
	sandukh-an	this box
	busta-has	that blanket
	ha-shan	this camel
	magàlo-dan	this town

31. The Demonstrative may be intensified by the addition of the definite article in two ways (cf. § 198):

(i) The definite article **-a** and demonstrative adjective both require linking consonants.

In this case the linking consonant used with the Demonstrative Suffix is always **k** for masculine words, and **t** for feminine words.

Examples,

nínkakan	this man	nâgtatâ	that woman
ghórigakan	this wood	mêshatas	that place
dágahhakan	this stone	sanadùkhdatan	these boxes

(ii) The definite article is suffixed to the demonstrative without any linking consonant.

Examples,

ninkâsa	that man	gabaddâsu	that girl
nimánkani	these men	gèdkasa	that tree
ròbkanu	this rain	ínantasi	that daughter

(d) *Possessive Pronominal Adjectives.*

32. my	-ai- (-gi , or -di)
thy	-â- (-gi , or -di)
his	-ls- (-i)
her	-èd- (-i)
our	-èn- (-i) (including "you")
our	-aya- (-gi , or -di) (excluding "you")
your	-în- (-i)
their	-òd- (-i)

Except when qualifying terms of relationship, as "father," "mother," "husband," etc., the above suffixes require the definite article as well, as given in brackets after each person. Only **-ai**, **-â**, **-aya**, however, require the linking consonant, the remainder taking the article without any link.

The linking consonant to the article, when used, is always -g- for masculine words, -d- for feminine words.

<i>Example, aur-ki camel</i>			
aurkaigi	aurkaiga	aurkaigu	my camel
aurkàgi	aurkàga	aurkàgu	thy camel
aurkisi	aurkisa	aurkisu	his camel
aurkèdi	aurkèda	aurkèdu	her camel
aurkèni	aurkèna	aurkènu	our camel
aurkayági	aurkayága	aurkayágu	our camel
aurkini	aurkina	aurkinu	your camel
aurkòdi	aurkòda	aurkòdu	their camel

<i>aur-ti camels</i>			
aurtaidi	aurtaida	aurtaidu	my camels
aurtadi	aurtada	aurtadu	thy camels
aurtisi	aurtisa	aurtisu	his camels
aurtèdi	aurtèda	aurtèdu	her camels
aurtèni	aurtèna	aurtènu	our camels
aurtayádi	aurtayáda	aurtayádu	our camels
aurtini	aurtina	aurtinu	your camels
aurtòdi	aurtòda	aurtòdu	their camels

With terms of relationship, the definite article is not used after the possessive.

<i>Examples,</i>	abahai	my father
	hoyodà	thy mother
	nàgtis	his wife
	ninkèd	her husband
	adèrkèn	our uncle
	tolkaya	our tribe
	awòwigin	your grandfather
	walálkòd	their brother

(e) *The Interrogative Adjective.*

33. "Which?" "What?" are expressed often by the suffix -e ? This suffix is sounded distinctly at the end of the noun, like English "eh?", but must not be pronounced as ei or è.

ninke ?	what man ?
sandukhe ?	what box ?
gabaðde ?	what girl ?

This form is most commonly used alone, or with the word **wa** (is), and usually repeats some noun already mentioned.

Examples, **ninki yimi** the man has come
 ninke ? or wa ninke ? what man ?

4. *The Plural of Nouns.*

34. The only inflexion which nouns undergo occurs in the formation of the Plural.

There are six methods of forming the Plural, and in all except the first (Masculine Monosyllables) the gender is reversed in the process, and the linking consonant, required with the suffixes, is altered from guttural to dental, or *vice versa*.

35. (i) Masculine Monosyllables repeat the last two letters. The masculine, or guttural, linking consonant is retained. In words ending in **-n**, the **-n** becomes **-m**, while the inflexion is always **-an**.

Examples,

dab-ki	fire	plural	dabab-ki
fas-ki	axe	„	fasas-ki
rād-ki	track	„	rādad-ki
kob-ki	cup	„	kobob-ki
‘oll-ki	army	„	‘oll‘oll-ki
nin-ki	man	„	niman-ki
tin-ki	tin	„	timan-ki
‘aīn-ki	belly-band	„	‘aīman-ki
sun-ki	strap	„	suman-ki

Exceptions,

rèr-ki	family, household	plural	rèro-hi
na‘s-ki	fool	„	na‘syo-di
gès-ki	horn	„	gèsas-ki, or gèso-hi
‘el-ki	well	„	‘elal-shi
bāl-ki	feather	„	bālal-shi
aur-ki	camel	„	aur-ti
sais-ki	groom	„	saisis-ki, or saisin-ti

36. (ii) Nouns ending in **-a**, or **-ei** (all Masculine) change **-a**, or **-ei** into **-yal**, and take the feminine, or dental, linking consonant.

Examples,

kòra-hi	saddle	plural	kòryal, kòryashi
busta-hi	blanket	„	bustyal-shi
aba-hi	father	„	abyal-shi

tuka-hi	crow	plural	tukyal-shi
bilawa-hi	dagger	„	bilawyal-shi
hákama-hi	bridle	„	hákamyal-shi
odei-gi	old man	„	odyal-shi
fùlei-gi	coward	„	fùlyal-shi

Exceptions :

These plurals are used with the masculine, or guttural, linking consonant, by Dolbohanta, and other eastern tribes :

bustyalki, kòryalki, hákamyalki, etc.

37. (iii) Nouns ending in -o (all Feminine) add -in, and take the masculine, or guttural, linking consonant.

Examples,

'asho-di	day	plural	'ashoïn-ki
hoyo-di	mother	„	hoyoïn-ki
¹ gudimo-di	native axe	„	gudimoïn-ki
dèro-di	gazelle	„	dèroïn-ki
ghànso-di	bow	„	ghànsoïn-ki

38. (iv) Masculine Polysyllables (except those under ii) add -o. If the final letter is an aspirate or ' , -yo is added.

These plurals take the feminine, or dental linking consonant, the -o being then usually changed to -a.

Examples,

fandal-ki	spoon	plural	fandalo, fandaladi
libahh-i	lion	„	libahhyo-di
kùrsi-gi	chair	„	kùrsyo-di
muda'-i	fork	„	muda'yo-di
muftah-i	key	„	muftahyo-di
maga'-i	name	„	maga'yo-di

Exceptions,

dagahh-i	stone	„	dagahhan-ti
ugahh-i	egg	„	ugahhan-ti
sibaihh-i	sepoy	„	sibaihhin-ti
àghil-ki	chief	„	àghilin-ti, or oghâl-shi
fáras-ki	horse	„	fardo-hi
ilig-gi	tooth	„	ilko-di
askàri-gi	soldier	„	askàrr-ti

¹ The common word now used. But it is originally the plural of an older word *gudin*, which is also used.

gùri-gi	enclosure	plural	gùrio-hi
Yibir-ki	Yibir	„	Yibro-hi
Midgàn-ki	Midgan	„	Midgo-hi

Foreign words often add **-yo** in other cases than those given in the rule above:

rakàb-ki	stirrup	plural	rakàbyo-di
kitàb-ki	book	„	kitàbyo-di

39. (v) Words borrowed from the Arabic usually form their plurals after the fashion of the broken plurals of that language, and take the feminine linking consonant.

Examples,

sandukh-i	box	plural	sanadukh-di
bandukh-i	gun	„	banadukh-di, or banadikh-di
sirkál-ki	officer	„	sirakíl-shi
kùrsi-gi	chair	„	kurási-di
warkhád-di	paper	„	warákh-di
moskhìn-ki	beggar	„	mosakhìn-ti
musmar-ki	nail	„	musamar-ti

40. (vi) All Feminine Nouns, except those in (iii), add **o**, and take the masculine linking consonant, **h**.

When the noun is defined the **o** is assimilated to the form of the article vowel, as in the case of masculine nouns in **a**.

Examples,

nàg-ti	woman	plural	nàgo, nàgihi, nàgaha, nàguhu
hal-shi	she-camel	„	halo, halihi, halaha, haluhu
mel-shi	place	„	melo-hi
lug-ti	leg	„	lugo-hi
deg-ti	ear	„	dego-hi
làn-ti	branch	„	làmo-hi
'alen-ti	leaf	„	'alemo-hi
jòniad-di	bag	„	jòniado-hi
ga'an-ti	hand	„	ga'amo-hi
ri-di	goat	„	riyo-hi
kab-ti	shoe	„	kabo-hi

Exception,

il-shi	eye	„	indo-hi
---------------	-----	---	----------------

There exist the following plural nouns, all of which end in **o** and take the masculine article **hi**, and therefore belong to this class.

biyo-hi	water
'āno-hi	milk
gèdo-hi	grass
timo-hi	hair
hòlo-hi	flocks, property

41. An Intensive Plural, ending in **-al, -yal**, is used in poetic phraseology.

Example, **Idinku baneyal...dùlan ma bulaten ?**

Have ye over plains and plains gone to war ?

Gerar wa bogholal. Songs are in hundreds.

42. After Numerals the plural form of a noun is not used except in the case of Feminine Nouns of class (vi). In this case **d** is added to the inflexion.

<i>Examples,</i>	2 men	lába nin
	4 boxes	áfar sandukh
	3 blankets	sádehh busta
	7 days	todòba 'asho
but,	5 she-camels	shan halod
	2 places	lába melod
	4 bags	áfar joniadod
	9 months	sagàl bilod

5. Cases of Nouns.

43. There are no inflexions of the noun to represent the Declension ; the cases must therefore be distinguished by position and context. This is not an easy matter, and requires a knowledge of other parts of speech not yet described : it will therefore be left to be discussed under Syntax (cf. § 155).

44. The usual order of a simple sentence is,

(i) Subject, (ii) Object, (iii) Verb.

An Adverb may be placed first of all, or before the Verb.

Examples,

	Subject	Object	Verb	
		sandukh	la kâli	}
		a box	bring	
	sirkálku	fâraska	fûleya	}
	the officer	the horse	is riding	
Adv.				
galábta	an	Burao	ghobon dõna	}
this evening	I	Burao	am going to reach	
	harũdki	fâraska	sì	}
	the jowaree	(to) the horse	give	

45. The *Possessive Case* may be expressed in two ways.

(i) The common method is by the use of the Possessive suffix.

Examples,

nin akhalkĩsu	a man his house
sirkálku faraskĩsa	the Officer his horse
nàgti bokhorkèda	the woman her sash

(ii) The Noun in the possessive case is placed after the noun possessed.

This can only be done where the Possessor is defined by the definite article. The Possessor always takes the suffix **a**.

Example,

ákhalki ninka	the house of the man
<i>not</i> ákhalki ninki	
(nor is it possible to say, ákhalki nin	
for "the house of a man").	

The following are the typical forms :

or	The horse of the officer	fâraski sirkálka
		sirkálka faraskĩsu
	The horse of an officer	nin sirkál faraskĩsu
	A horse of the officer	fâras sirkálka
	A horse of the officer	fardaha sirkálka mid
	has died	
		ba ãintei
	(literally, of the horses of the officer one has died).	
	A horse of an officer	sirkál faraskĩsi

6. *Numerals.*46. *Cardinals,*

1. (kô-di), mid-ki	16. léhhyo-tòban-ki
2. lába-di	17. todòbyo-tòban-ki
3. sádehh-di	18. sidèdyo-tòban-ki
4. áfar-ti	19. sagàlyo-tòban-ki
5. shan-ti	20. labàton-ki
6. lehh-di	21. kôbyo-labàton-ki
7. todòba-di	22. lábyo-labàton-ki
8. sidèd-di	etc. etc.
9. sagàl-ki	30. sóddon-ki
10. tòban-ki	40. afárton-ki
11. kôbyo-tòban-ki	50. kónton-ki
12. lábyo-tòban-ki	60. léhhdon-ki
13. sádehhyo-tòban-ki	70. todobàton-ki
14. áfaryo-tòban-ki	80. sidèton-ki
15. shányo-tòban-ki	90. sagàshon-ki
	100. bóghol-ki
	1,000. kun-ki

47. *Rules for the use of the Numerals.*

(i) The Numerals are placed before the noun they qualify.

(ii) Masculine nouns, and Feminine nouns ending in *o* are used in the singular.

Feminine Nouns (except those ending in *o*) add *od*.

(iii) If the Noun qualified by a numeral is defined by the Definite Article, Demonstrative, or Possessive, the suffix is attached to the numeral and not to the noun, numerals 1—8 taking the dental linking consonant, the remainder the guttural linking consonant, irrespectively of the gender of the noun.

Examples,

lába nin	2 men	sádehh 'asho	3 days
áfar fâras	4 horses	shan kòra	5 saddles
lehh halod	6 camels	todòba jòniadod	7 bags
tobánki askàri	the ten soldiers		
áfarti nin	the four men		
lábada halod	those two camels		
bógholkaigi adi	my hundred sheep.		

48. (i) **Kô** is only used in counting, and is never used with a noun :

mid is not used to qualify a noun, but is used as an Indefinite Impersonal Pronoun.

one man	nin
one (thing) is bad	mid ba hhun
one (man) is bad	nin ba hhun

(ii) The numerals 19, 29, 39, etc., are usually translated by,

labàton midla	20 minus one = 19
sóddon midla	30 minus one = 29
bóghol midla	100 minus one = 99

(iii) The numerals over 100 are translated as follows :

	(iyo = and)
101	boghól-iyo mid
102	boghól-iyo lába
130	boghól-iyo sóddon
146	boghól-iyo léhhyo-afárton

(iv) Time in hours is translated by the Cardinal numerals with the Definite Article. (**sa'adod** = hours, may be used.)

3 o'clock	sádehhda (sa'adod)
1 o'clock	kôdi
half-past 2	lábada iyo badki

49. *Fractions,*

a portion	mel-shi		
$\frac{1}{2}$	bad-ki	$\frac{1}{8}$	fallad-di
$\frac{1}{3}$	dalòl-ki	$\frac{1}{10}$	rima-di
$\frac{1}{4}$	wahh-di		

50. *Ordinals,*

first	kôwad, hòre	eighth	sidèdad
second	lábada	ninth	sagàlad
third	sádehhad	tenth	tòbnad
fourth	áfrad	eleventh	kóbyo-tòbnad
fifth	shánad		etc.
sixth	léhhad	twentieth	labàtonad
seventh	todòbad		

These are used like adjectives and follow the nouns they qualify, but are not inflected.

nin lábad	a second man
nàgti áfrad	the fourth woman
ki léhhad	the sixth

51. Distributive Numbers. No special forms are used for these,

each = **kasta** every = **walba** (see § 68) ;

but distributive numbers are usually expressed by the particle **ba** (§ 143 (e)).

give 10 each	nin ba tòban sì
one by one	mid mid
in tens	tòban tòban

52. Periodical Numbers,

(time	mar, kol, gor)
once	kol, mar
three times	sádehh gor

7. Pronouns.

(a) Simple Personal Pronouns.

(1) Subjective.

53. The simple, or Enclitic, forms are :

-an	I
-ad	thou
-u	he
-ai	} she
-ei	
-ainu	} we (inclusive)
-einu	
-annu	we (exclusive)
-aidin	} ye
-eidin	
-ai	} they
-ei	

These cannot stand alone in a sentence, but must follow, and be attached to, some preceding word, which may be any part of speech.

Examples,

gortas-u yidi	then-he said
¹ had'-an imàdo	if-I come
Burao-einu nil	at Burao-we lived
¹ imis'-ad dònesa ?	how-many-do-you want ?
ninki-an dòneya	the man-(whom)-I want

54. Very often, however, these simple forms are combined with the letters **w-**, **b-**, or **y-** (which represent certain particles, **wa**, **ba**, **ya**) and are then used as separate words.

wan, **wad**, **wu**, etc. are forms which may be used at the beginning of a sentence, but are never used in any other position.
ban, **bad**, **bu**, etc. }
yan, **yad**, **yu**, etc. } are synonymous forms, and are interchangeable.

b- is preferred by Eastern and Southern Somalis.

y- is preferred by the Coast, Western and Central tribes.

These forms usually occur immediately before the verb or its particles, but never at the beginning of a sentence (cf. § 236).

55. There are two ways of emphasising the Personal Pronouns, which may be used disjunctively, like the French “*moi*,” “*toi*,” etc. This is done by the addition of the Definite Article.

In both cases the simple form for the third person singular masculine is **is**.

(i) The article suffix is added to the simple form without any linking consonant, thus :

ani	I	adi	Thou	(isi)	He
ana		ada		(isa)	
anu		adu		isu	

These are the only persons which are found in this form.

(ii) The article suffix and linking consonant is added to the last or to the Enclitic forms of the plural.

The **-a** and **-u** suffixes only are used in this case, thus :

ánigu	ániga	I
ádigu	ádiga	Thou
ísagu	ísaga	He
iyadu	iyada	She

¹ A final vowel is usually dropped before the personal pronoun, as is shown here by an apostrophe '.

ínnagu,	ínnaga	We
ánnagu,	ánnaga	We (exclusive)
ídinku,	ídinka	Ye
íyagu,	íyaga	They

To translate "I myself" cf. § 190.

56. Another form is produced by the suffix **-na** (and).

anna	and I
adna	and you
isna	and he
iyana	and she
innuna	and we
annuna	and we
idinna	and ye
iyana	and they

57. A compound, "Indicative," form is made by the addition of **wahh** (thing).

wahhan has the meaning of "this is what I..."

These forms are especially used with the verbs "want," "say," "think," "do," but may be used with any verb.

wahhan	this is what I...
wahhad	„ „ „ thou...
wuhhu	„ „ „ he...
wahhai	„ „ „ she...
wahhainu	„ „ „ we...
wahhannu	„ „ „ we...
wahhaidin	„ „ „ ye...
wahhai	„ „ „ they...

58. An interrogative form of the same is made with **mahha** (what ?)

mahhan...?	what... I...?
mahhad...?	what... thou...?
muhhu...?	what... he...?
mahhai...?	what... she...?
mahhainu...?	what... we...?
mahhannu...?	what... we...?
mahhaidin...?	what... ye...?
mahhai...?	what... they...?

59. These two forms are used very frequently in introducing questions and answers.

Examples,

mahhad dònesa ?	}	wahhan dòneya, etc.	}
what do you want ?	}	I want, etc.	}
hagg'eidin takten ?	}	wahhannu tagnei, etc.	}
where did you go ?	}	we went to, etc.	}
muhhu yidi ?	}	wuhhu yidi...	}
what did he say ?	}	he said...	}

(2) *Objective.*

60. The *objective*, or oblique, case of the Personal Pronouns has special forms, which are used independently as separate words.

	Simple	Emphatic
me	i	ániga
thee	ku	ádiga
him	u	isága
her	ku	iyáda
us	na	{innága annága
you	idin	idínka
them	u, or ku	iyága

The accentuation of these emphatic forms must be noticed, to distinguish them from the Subjective case.

Examples, isága (Obj.) and isaga (Subj.)
iyága „ and iyaga „

61. (iii) The *Reflexive Pronoun* is iss.

iss dil kill yourself

This is also used reciprocally :

iss laya slay each other

(b) *Possessive Pronouns.*

62. These have the same forms as the suffixes (§ 32) with a consonant (k masc. t fem.) prefixed, and the definite article suffixed, to them (cf. § 199).

	Masc.	Fem.
mine	kai-gi, -ga, -gu.	tai-di, -da, -du.
thine	kà-gi, -ga, -gu.	tà-di, -da, -du.
his	kls-i, -a, -u.	tls-i, -a, -u.

hers	kèd-i	-a -u	tèd-i	-a -u
ours	kèn-i	-a -u	tèn-i	-a -u
ours	kayá-gi	-ga -gu	tayá-di	-da -du
yours	kìn-i	-a -u	tìn-i	-a -u
theirs	kòd-i	-a -u	tòd-i	-a -u

In the Plural, the above prefix **ku**, **tu**, instead of **k**, **t**, to the suffix, as,

kuaigi, **tuaidi**, **kuàgi**, **tuàdi**, etc.

(c) *Demonstrative Pronouns.*

63. These also have the same forms as the adjectival suffixes (§ 30), and are used with consonants as above.

	Sing.			Plur.	
	Masc.	Fem.		Masc.	Fem.
this	kan,	tan	these	kuan,	tuan
that	{ kas, tas		those	kuas, tuas	
	{ kà, tà				

They may be intensified by the definite article, as follows :

sing. **kani**, **kana**, **kanu**, **kasa**, **tasu**, etc.

plur. **kúakan**, **túatan**, **kúakas**, etc.

or **kuani**, **tuani**, **kuasi**, etc.

Another form is,

kò, **tò** that yonder

kuò, **tuò** those yonder

The definite article is used independently as a pronoun in the same way.

ki, **ka**, **ku** ; **ti**, **ta**, **tu**.

ki kăleh the other one

ta wein the big one.

The plur. form is

kuer, **tuer**

Example, **kuer 'ad'ada** the white ones

64. (d) *Relative Pronouns.*

None.

65. (e) *Interrogative Pronouns.*

(i) Subjective :

who ? what ? **ya** ? (sing.)

kue ? (plur.)

ke ? te ? are also used disjunctively in this sense, as the other suffixes.

(ii) Objective :

whom ? **ya ?**
 what ? **mahha ?** (§ 58)

66. The suffix **-ma** is used as an interrogative pronominal adjective, but is not included among the other suffixes, as it has not the typical form, but is really the interrogative particle (cf. § 94).

ninma ? what man ?
gorma ? when ?
wa sa'adma ? what hour is it ?

-ma is also used suffixed to the simple personal pronouns, and definite article, meaning "which of?"

kuma ? tuma ? which one ? (indefinite)
innama ? which of us ?
annama ? „
idinma ? which of you two ?
iyama ? which of them ?

These are used both subjectively and objectively.

The possessive case is,

yàleh ? kumàleh ? whose ?

(f) *Indefinite Pronouns.*

67. **la** one, they, people

(similar to the French pronoun "*on*," in meaning and construction).

This pronoun is used in construction like any simple personal pronoun.

The following euphonic alterations take place when any simple pronoun or particle follows :

la i	becomes	lei
la u	„	lo
la ku	„	lagu
la idin	„	leidin
la ka	„	laga

68. The following are substantival and are used with the definite article suffix when necessary.

wahh-i	something, anything	gidi-gi	} all, whole
mid-ki	one, an, a	kulli-gi	
'id-di	someone, anyone	damán-ti	
ghof-ki	person	hebel-ki	a certain man
ghar-ki	some, several	keli-gi	alone
daur-ki	some, a few	gòni-gi	solitary, apart
in-ti	some, a quantity		

The following are treated as adjectives and follow the noun qualified, but are not inflected for number or gender.

badan	many	walba, waliba	every
yer	few	kasta	each
hoga	little	o ðan	all
un	any, soever	keliah	only
kāleh	other	gòniah	separate, special

B. ADJECTIVES.

69. Adjectives follow the noun they qualify, and agree in Number and Definition.

1. *Classes of Adjectives.*

70. They are divided into :

- a. Radical.
- b. Derivative.
- c. Compound.

(a) *Radical Adjectives.*

71. These are not numerous, and express some simple, natural, or inherent, quality, such as size, shape, colour, or nature. They are radical words and are not derived from other roots.

A complete list is given, with their inflexions, in the Table, § 76.

(b) *Derivative Adjectives.*

(i) *Verbal Adjectives.*

72. Verbal Adjectives are the Passive Past Participles of verbs, ending in **-an**, or **-san**.

They express the result of the action of the verb.

Examples,

'adeisan	clean	from	'adei	clean
hagáksan	straight	,,	hagáji	straighten
furan	open	,,	fur	open
hedan	closed	,,	hed	close
wanáksan	good	,,	wanáji	make good
ðameyan	finished	,,	ðamei	finish

(ii) *Noun Adjectives.*

73. These are formed in four ways.

(1) by the suffix **-leh** (possessing, containing).

Examples,

garadleh	sensible	from	garad	sense
uskagleh	dirty	,,	uskag	dirt
arleh	speckled	,,	ar	spot
blyoleh	containing water	,,	blyo	water

(2) by the suffix **-la** (deprived of).

garadla	foolish	from	garad	sense
indála	blind	,,	indo	eyes
degála	deaf	,,	dego	ears

(3) by the suffix **-ah** (being, made of).

ghoriah	wooden	from	ghori	wood
birah	of iron	,,	bir	iron
faridah	clever	,,	farid	cleverness

Adjectives may be formed at will like the above from any noun as required.

(4) by the suffix **-ed** (expressing origin).

Somàlied	Somali			
Arabed	Arab			
Àdmed	of Aden			
baded	of the sea	from	bað	sea
'ano wlyiled	rhinoceros milk,	,,	wlyil	rhinoceros

(c) *Compound Adjectives.*

74. Formed from two separate words :

(i) Noun and Adjective.

hòg-wein	strong (hòg strength, wein great)
hunguri-wein	greedy (hunguri throat)

didid-badan	sweaty (didid sweat, badan plenty)
af-badan	sharp (af edge)
adeig-run	hardy (adeig hardness, run right)

(ii) The 3rd person singular Present Perfect Indicative of a verb, being really an adjectival Relative Clause.

nin ghora	clerk, lit. a man who writes
fùli yaghán	knowing how to ride
af yaghán	interpreter, eloquent
la arka	visible
an la arkin	invisible

2. *Inflexions of Adjectives.*

75. Adjectives are inflected to agree with the nouns they qualify in the following cases :

- (i) in the plural number,
- (ii) when the noun is defined by the article suffix **-i** (and in certain cases **-a**),
- (iii) in case (ii) the inflexion is different for masc. (*guttural*), and fem. (*dental*) *linking consonants* (cf. § 34).

(a) *Radical Adjectives.*

76. The following general rules are followed :

- (i) Plural. Reduplicate the first syllable.
- (ii) } {Article **-ki**, **-gi**, **-hi**. Add **-a**.
- (iii) } {Article **-ti**, **-di**. Add **-eid**.
- (iv) If the noun is defined with article, **-a**, the adjective only agrees with it in number.

Note. The rule for the inflexions **-a**, **-eid**, (ii and iii) is invariable.

But when qualifying plural nouns with the definite article (other than the Reduplicated Plurals, as **niman**), adjectives may or may not take the plural inflexion (cf. § 164). Thus,

nàgihi waweina, or **nàgihi weina** the big women,
askàrrti hhunhhumeid, or **askàrrti hhumeid** the bad soldiers.

When qualifying the Reduplicated Plurals, and all indefinite plurals, the plural inflexion of the adjective is always required.

Examples, **nimánki waweina**
nàgo wawein
askàrr hhunhhun

Table of the Inflections of all known Radical Adjectives.

Number	Sing.	Sing.	Sing.	Plur.	Plur.	Plur.
Link. Cons.	Both	Masc. (Gutt.)	Fem. (Dent.)	Both	Masc. (Gutt.)	Fem. (Dent.)
Definition	Indefinite or Suffix -a	Suffix -i	Suffix -i	Indefinite or Suffix -a	Suffix -i	Suffix -i
Exs. of Nouns Qualified	nin nàg ninka nàgta	ninki (and nàgthi)	nàgti (and askàrtti the soldiers)	niman nimánka nàgo nàgaha askàrr askàrtta	nimánki (and nàgthi)	askàrtti
white	'ad	'ada	'adeid	'ad'ad	'ad'ada	'ad'adeid
hard	adag	adka	adkeld	adadag	adadka	adadkeld
red	'as	'asa	'aseid	'as'as	'as'asa	'as'aseid
yellow	aul	aula	auleld	aulaul	aulaula	aulauleld
ripe	bisil	bisla	bisaleid	bisil	bisbisl	bisbisleid
long	der	dera	dereld	derder	derdera	derdereld
unripe	'edin	'edna	'edneid	'ed'in	'ed'edna	'ed'edneid
clever	feyig	feyiga	feyigeld	feyig	feyiga	feyigeld
light	fi'an	fi'ana	fi'aneid	fi'fi'an	fi'fi'ana	fi'fi'aneid
cold	fudud	fududa	fududeid	fudufud	fudufududa	fudufudeld
bad	ghabó	ghaboba	ghabobeid	ghabó	ghabghabó	ghabghabobeid
hot	hhun	hhuma	hhumeid	hhunhhun	hhunhhuma	hhunhhumeid
black	kulul	kulula	kululeid	kulukul	kulkulula	kulkululeid
fat	madó	madóba	madóbeid	madmadó	madmadóba	madmadóbeid
heavy	shilis	shishla	shishleid	shilishlis	shishishla	shishishleid
fresh	'ulus	'usla	'usleid	'ul'ulus	'us'usla	'us'usleid
large	'usub	'usba	'usbeid	'us'usub	'us'usba	'us'usbeid
small	wein	weina	weineid	wawein	wawaina	waweineid
	yer	yera	yereid	yeyer	yeyera	yeyereid

(b) *Derivative Adjectives.*

77. These are not usually inflected (except some Verbal adjectives) when qualifying a plural noun, the inflexion entirely depending on the definite article, suffix, and linking consonant.

(i) *Verbal Adjectives.*

78. The Inflexions are the same as for Radical Adjectives, except that only some are reduplicated in the plural :

		Indefinite, or Def.		
		Art. -ka, -ta	Def. Art. -ki	Def. Art. -ti
good	<i>sing.</i>	wanáksan	wanáksana	wanáksaneid
	<i>plur.</i>			
broad	<i>sing.</i>	baladan	baladna	baladneid
	<i>plur.</i>	balbaladan	balbaladna	balbaladneid
stout	<i>sing.</i>	buran	burra	burreid
	<i>plur.</i>	burburan	burburra	burburreid
empty	<i>sing.</i>	maðan	maðana	maðaneid
	<i>plur.</i>	maðmaðan	maðmaðana	maðmaðaneid
absent	<i>sing.</i>	maghan	maghana	maghaneid
	<i>plur.</i>			
tied	<i>sing.</i>	hedan	hedna	hedneid
	<i>plur.</i>	hedhedan	hedhedna	hedhedneid
clean	<i>sing.</i>	safeisan	safeisana	safeisaneid
	<i>plur.</i>			

(ii) *Noun Adjectives.*

79. These are not altered in the Plural.

Classes (i), (ii), and (iii) (adjectives in -leh, -la, -ah), obey the following rules :

1. If the qualified noun is defined by -a, or -i, the noun portion of the adjective takes its proper article suffix -a.

2. After Article -a (guttural or dental) there is no further inflexion.

3. After Article -i the terminal portion of the adjective is also inflected :

(a) After Masc. (Gutt.) Link. Cons.

-ki, -gi, -hi.....-a is added

(b) After Fem. (Dent.) Link. Cons.

-ti, -di-aid is added

Inflexions of Noun Adjectives.

	Indefinite	Art. -ka, -ta	Art. -ki	Art. -ti
(i)	garadleh sensible	garadkáleh	garadkálaha	garadkálahaid
	akhlileh sensible	akhligáleh	akhligálaha	akhligálahaid
	oghònleh knowing	oghòntáleh	oghòntálaha	oghòntálahaid
	uskagleh dirty	uskaggáleh	uskaggálaha	uskaggálahaid
	baraleh spotted	baraháleh	barahálaha	barahálahaid
	bìyoleh containing water	bìyaháleh	bìyahálaha	bìyahálahaid
(ii)	garadla senseless	garadkala	garadkálää	garadkálääid
	indála blind	indahala	indahálää	indahálääid
	lugla legless	lugtala	lugtálää	lugtálääid
	haulla unemployed	haushala	haushálää	haushálääid
(iii)	faridah clever	faridkaäh	faridkaäha	faridkaähaid
	birah of iron	birtaäh	birtaäha	birtaähaid
	ghoriah wooden	ghorigaäh	ghorigaäha	ghorigaähaid

The following have special plural forms :

'ajisah	<i>{sing.</i>	'ajiskaäh	'ajiskaäha	'ajiskaähaid
lazy	<i>{plur.</i>	'ajisintaäh	'ajisintaäha	'ajisintaähaid
gesiah	<i>{sing.</i>	gesigaäh	gesigaäha	gesigaähaid
brave	<i>{plur.</i>	gesiyintaäh	gesiyintaäha	gesiyintaähaid

80. The last class of Noun Adjectives, in -ed, have only one inflexion.

When qualifying a noun with article suffix -i of any gender or number they take -a.

The e is usually dropped.

<i>Examples,</i>	Somàlied	Somàlida
	Arabed	Arabta
	bilàdki Somàlida	the Somali country
	afki Arabta	the Arab language

(c) *Compound Adjectives.*

81. It is impossible to give rules for the inflexions of these, since as far as possible the necessity is avoided, by a separation into the component parts, and the natives themselves are by no means unanimous on the question.

The following examples, however, are given, being the few types that I have satisfied myself about :

af badan sharp :

mindì af badan a sharp knife ; **mindida afka badan** the sharp knife ; or, **mindidi afka badneid**
mindiyò afaf badbadan sharp knives
mindiyaha afafka badbadan, or, **mindiyihi afafka badbadna** the sharp knives

hog wein strong :

nin, ninka, nag, nagta, hog wein a, or the, strong man, or woman
ninki or **nimanki, hog weina** the strong man, or men ;
nagti hog weineid the strong women ; **nagihi hog weina** the strong women.

af yaghan eloquent :

In adjectives like this the verb is conjugated and therefore agrees in number and gender.

nin af yaghán	an eloquent man
nàg af taghán	„ woman
ninki }	the eloquent man
ninka }	
nàgti }	„ woman
nàgta }	
niman af yaghánin	eloquent men
nàgo af yaghánin	„ women
nimánki }	the eloquent men
nimánka }	
nàgihi }	„ women
nàgaha }	

This adjective may be treated as one word, and take the termination **-ah**, in which case it is inflected regularly like such derivative adjectives :

afyaghánah, afyaghánkaäh, afyaghánkaäha,
afyaghánkaähaid.

(3) *Comparison of Adjectives.*

82. There is no inflexion for the comparison of Adjectives. This want is supplied by the use of the particles **ka** more, more than ; **u, ugu** most.

Examples, **ákhalkan ákhalkas ka wein**
This house is bigger than that house
mid ka wein la kâli bring a bigger one
ki u wanáksana The best
ya ugu horèya ? Which is first of all ?

“is most,” is usually translated by **ba, sà**.

kas sà wanáksan that is best
sádehhdas kán ba wein of those three this is the biggest

C. VERBS.

1. *Conjugation.*

(a) *Moods and Tenses.*

83. The Verb has four moods :

Imperative,	Indicative,
Infinitive,	Subjunctive.

Also, Verbal Adjective, or Past Participle, and Verbal Noun.

84. There are three Regular Conjugations, distinguished by the form of the Verb root, and the formation of the Infinitive.

The Verb root is the 2nd person singular of the Imperative.

1st Conjugation. Root ends in a consonant.

2nd	„	„	„	-o.
3rd	„	„	„	-i.

The Infinitive is formed

in	1,	by adding -i to the root.
	2 and 3,	by adding -n to the root.

85. The following is a paradigm of the verb **shég** (tell), a regular verb of the 1st Conjugation.

There are four terminations for the Tense inflexions.

-a	is used in the Present Indicative tenses.
-ei	„ „ Past „ „
-e	„ „ Potential tense.
-o	„ „ Subjunctive mood.

Imperative	shég	tell thou.
Verb Adjective	shègan	told.
Verb Noun	shegnín	telling.
Infinitive	shègi	to tell

Indicative :

Aorist	¹ wa shèga	I (usually) tell, I am to tell.
Preterite	wa shègei	I told, have told, had told.
Continuative Present	wa shègeya	I am telling, intend to tell.
Continuative Past	wa shègeyi	I was telling.
Future Definite	wa shègi dóna	I am going to tell.
Habitual Present	wa shégí jira	I am in the habit of telling.
Habitual Past	wa shégí jirei	I used to tell.
Conditional	wa shègi laha	I would, or should tell, I would have, or should have told.
Potential	an shège	I may, might tell.

Subjunctive :

Aorist	(hadi) an shègo	(If) I tell, told, had told.
Continuative	(hadi) an shègeyo	(If) I were to tell, were telling.
Future	(hadi) an shègi dònó	(If) I were, had been, about to tell.
Habitual	(hadi) an shégí jiro	(If) I were, had been, accustomed to tell.

86. The tenses fall into three classes.

(i) The Aorist, Preterite, and Potential Indicative, and the Aorist Subjunctive, are simple or radical, and the terminations are added directly to the root.

¹ **wa** is a particle used frequently with the verb, and may take the place of a personal pronoun.

- (ii) In the Continuative tenses the terminations are,
-eya (or **-aya**, or **-ahaya**),
-eyei (or **-ayei**, or **-ahayei**),
-eyo (or **-ayo**, or **-ahayo**).

These are suffixed, in the 1st Conjugation apparently to the root, but in the 2nd and 3rd Conjugations to the Infinitive.

The syllable **ey** is short and is not accented.

(iii) The third class consists of Auxiliary tenses, formed by the Infinitive with an auxiliary verb.

87. In the 2nd Conjugation (verbs ending in **-o**), the **-o** is often changed to **-a** in the Infinitive and other moods.

In the Simple tenses of this Conjugation, **d** is inserted between the root and tense termination.

<i>Examples,</i>	baro	learn	Infinitive	baran
	jògso	stop	wan jògsoda	I stop

88. There are three persons in the Singular and Plural, and two genders in the 3rd person singular.

The following are the variations in the four tense terminations for the different persons.

	Present Indicative	Past Indicative	Potential Indicative	Subjunctive
Sing. 1.	-a	-ei	-e	-o
2.	{ -ta -sa	{ -tei -sei	{ -te, -tide -se, -side	{ -to, -tid -so, -sid
3 m.	-a	-ei	-e	-o
3 f.	{ -ta -sa	{ -tei -sei	{ -te -se	{ -to -so
Plur. 1.	-na	-nei	-ne	-no
2.	{ -tan -san	{ -ten -sen	{ -tène -sène	{ -tán -sán
3.	-an	-en	-ène	-án

In the 2nd person singular and plural, and 3rd person fem. singular, **t** is used after a consonant,

s is used after **i**, e.g. in the 3rd Conjugation,
 and in Continuative tenses of all Conjugations.

89. (b) *Affirmative Conjugation.*

I. **shég** tell. II. **gürso** marry. III. **samèi** make.

Infinitive.

shègi

gürsan

samèin.

Imperative.

	Let me tell	Let me marry	Let me make
Sing. 1.	an shègo	an gùrsado	an samèyo
2.	shég	gùrso	samèi
3 m.	ha shègo	ha gùrsado	ha samèyo
3 f.	ha shégto	ha gùrsato	ha samèiso
Plur. 1.	an shégno	an gùrsano	an samèino
2.	shèga	gùrsada	samèya
3.	ha shègan	ha gùrsadan	ha samèyan

*Indicative.**Aorist.*

	I tell	I marry	I make
Sing. 1.	shèga	gùrsada	samèya
2.	shégta	gùrsata	samèisa
3 m.	shèga	gùrsada	samèya
3 f.	shégta	gùrsata	samèisa
Plur. 1.	shégna	gùrsana	samèina
2.	shégtan	gùrsatan	samèisan
3.	shègan	gùrsadan	samèyan

Preterite.

	I told	I married	I made
Sing. 1.	shègei	gùrsadei	samèyei
2.	shégtei	gùrsatei	samèisei
3 m.	shègei	gùrsadei	samèyei
3 f.	shégtei	gùrsatei	samèisei
Plur. 1.	shégnei	gùrsanei	samèinei
2.	shégten	gùrsaten	samèisen
3.	shègen	gùrsaden	samèyen

Continuative Present.

	I am telling	I am marrying	I am making
Sing. 1.	shègeya	gùrsáneya	samèineya
2.	shègesa	gùrsánesa	samèinesa
3 m.	shègeya	gùrsáneya	samèineya
3 f.	shègesa	gùrsánesa	samèinesa
Plur. 1.	shègena	gùrsánena	samèinena
2.	shègesan	gùrsánesan	samèinesan
3.	shègeyan	gùrsáneyan	samèineyan

Continuative Past.

	I was telling	I was marrying	I was making
Sing. 1.	shègeyei	gùrsáneyei	samèineyei
2.	shègesei	gùrsánesei	samèinesei
3 m.	shègeyei	gùrsáneyei	samèineyei
3 f.	shègesei	gùrsánesei	samèinesei
Plur. 1.	shègenei	gùrsánenei	samèinenei
2.	shègesen	gùrsánesen	samèinesen
3.	shègeyen	gùrsáneyen	samèineyen

Future Definite.

	I am going to tell	I am going to marry	I am going to make
Sing. 1.	shègi dònà	gùrsan dona	samèin dònà
2.	„ dònà	„ dònà	„ dònà
3 m.	„ dònà	etc.	etc.
3 f.	„ dònà		
Plur. 1.	„ dònna		
2.	„ dòntan		
3.	„ dònàn		

Habitual Present.

	I am accustomed to tell	I am accustomed to marry	I am accustomed to make
	shégí jira	gùrsán jira	samèin jira

declined like “dònà” above.

Habitual Past.

	I used to tell	I used to marry	I used to make
Sing. 1.	shégí jirei	gùrsán jirei	samèin jirei
2.	shégí jirtei	etc.	etc.
3 m.	shégí jirei		
3 f.	shégí jirtei		
Plur. 1.	shégí jirnei		
2.	shégí jirten		
3.	shégí jiren		

Conditional.

	I should tell	I should marry	I should make
Sing. 1.	shègi laha	gùrsán laha	samèin laha
2.	shègi lahaid	etc.	etc.
3 m.	shègi laha		
3 f.	shègi lahaid		
Plur. 1.	shègi lahain		
2.	shègi lahaiden		
3.	shègi lahaiyen		

Potential.

	I may tell	I may marry	I may make
Sing. 1.	an shège	an gùrsade	an samèye
2.	ad shegtide	ad gùrsátide	ad samèiside
3 m.	ha shège	ha gùrsade	ha samèye
3 f.	ha shegte	ha gùrsate	ha samèise
Plur. 1.	an shegne	an gùrsane	an samèine
2.	ad shegtène	ad gùrsatène	ad samèisène
3.	ha shegène	ha gùrsadène	ha samèyène

Subjunctive.

(Only found in Subordinate Clauses.)

Aorist.

Sing. 1.	shègo	gùrsado	samèyo
2.	shegto, shegtid	gùrsato, gùrsatid	samèiso, samèisid
3 m.	shègo	gùrsado	samèyo
3 f.	shegto	gùrsato	samèiso
Plur. 1.	shegno	gùrsano	samèino
2.	shegtán	gùrsatán	samèisán
3.	shègán	gùrsadán	samèyán

Continuative.

Sing. 1.	shègeyo	gùrsányo	samèineyo
2.	shègeso, shègesid	gùrsáneso, -id	samèineso, -id
3 m.	shègeyo	gùrsányo	samèineyo
3 f.	shègeso	gùrsáneso	samèineso
Plur. 1.	shègeno	gùrsáneno	samèineno
2.	shègesán	gùrsánesán	samèinesán
3.	shègeyán	gùrsányán	samèineyán

Future.

Sing. 1.	shègi dònò	gùrsan dònò	samèin dònò
2.	shègi dònòto	etc.	etc.
	etc. as "shègo."		

Habitual.

shégí jiro	gùrsán jiro	samèin jiro
etc.	etc.	etc.

90. The following table gives all the types necessary for the formation of the tenses of a regular verb :

Conjugation	Root	Engl.	Inf.	Aorist	Continuative Pres.
I	hel	get	heli	hela	héleya
II	so'ò	walk	so'on	so'oda	so'óneya
III	sì	give	sìn	siya	sineya

The other Indicative, and the Subjunctive, tenses are formed by changing final -a into -ei, -e, or -o.

91. (c) *Negative Conjugation.*

The Negative Particles are :

Imperative Mood, ha, or yan.

Indicative Mood, ma.

Subjunctive Mood, an.

Imperative*	ha shègin	ha gùrsan	ha samèin
-------------	-----------	-----------	-----------

Indicative :

Aorist*	ma shègo	ma gùrsado	ma samèyo
Preterite	maan shègin	maan gùrsan	maan samèin
Contin. Pres.*	shègi mayo	gùrsan mayo	samèin mayo
Contin. Past	ma shèginin	ma gùrsáninin	ma samèininin
Fut. Def.*	ma shègi dònò	ma gùrsan dònò	ma samèin dono
Habit. Pres.*	ma shégí jiro	ma gùrsán jiro	ma samèin jiro
Habit. Past	ma shégí jirin	ma gùrsán jirin	ma samèin jirin
Conditional* }	maan shègen	maan gùr-	maan samè-
Potential }		saden	yen

Subjunctive :

Aorist	-anan shègin	-anan gùrsan	-anan samèin
Continuative	-anan shèg- inin	-anan gùrsán- inin	-anan samèin- inin
Future	-anan shègi dònin	-anan gùrsan dònin	-anan samèin dònin
Habitual	-anan shégi jirin	-anan gùrsán jirin	-anan samèin jirin

Notes,

(i) Only the tenses marked * are conjugated, the remainder having one form of the verb for all persons.

(ii) The Personal Pronouns are only used with the following negative tenses :

Imperative, Preterite and Conditional tenses of the Indicative Mood, and the Subjunctive tenses.

In other tenses of the Negative Conjugation no pronouns are used.

(iii) In the Present Continuative tense, **mayo** (am not) is conjugated like an auxiliary verb.

(iv) In the Subjunctive tenses, the negative particle, **-an**, and the pronouns are added as suffixes to the conjunction, or conjunctive particle.

Imperative.

	Let me not tell	Let me not marry	Let me not make
Sing. 1.	yanan shègin	yanan gùrsan	yanan samèin
2.	ha shègin	ha gùrsan	ha samèin
3 m.	yanu (or yu) shègin	yanu (or yu) gùrsan	yanu (or yu) samèin
3 f.	yanei (or yai) shègin	yanei (or yai) gùrsan	yanei (or yai) samèin
Plur. 1.	yanan shègin	yanan gùrsan	yanan samèin
2.	ha shègina	ha gùrsánina	ha samèinina
3.	yanei (or yai) shègin	yanei (or yai) gùrsan	yanei (or yai) samèin

*Indicative.**Aorist.**(Conjugated like Aorist Subj. Affirmative.)*

	I do not tell	I do not marry	I do not make
Sing. 1.	ma shègo	ma gùrsado	ma samèyo
2.	ma shegto	ma gùrsato	ma samèiso
3 m.	ma shègo	ma gùrsado	ma samèyo
3 f.	ma shegto	ma gùrsato	ma samèiso
Plur. 1.	ma shegno	ma gùrsano	ma samèino
2.	ma shegtán	ma gùrsatán	ma samèisán
3.	ma shègán	ma gùrsadán	ma samèyán

Continuative Present.

	I am not telling	I am not marrying	I am not making
Sing. 1.	shègi mayo	gùrsan mayo	samèin mayo
2.	shègi mayso (or maysid)	etc.	etc.
3 m.	shègi mayo		
3 f.	shègi mayso		
Plur. 1.	shègi mayno		
2.	shègi maysan		
3.	shègi mayan		

*Future Definite.**(The Auxiliary verb is declined as the Negative Aorist tense of 1st Conjugation.)*

	I am not going to tell	I am not going to marry	I am not going to make
Sing. 1.	ma shègi dònno	ma gùrsandònno	ma samèin dònno
2.	ma shègi dònno (dòntid)	etc.	etc.
3 m.	ma shègi dònno		
3 f.	ma shègi dònno		
Plur. 1.	ma shègi dònno		
2.	ma shègi dòn- tan		
3.	ma shègi dònnan		

Habitual Present.

	I am not accus- tomed to tell	I am not accus- tomed to marry	I am not accus- tomed to make
Sing. 1.	ma shegí jiro	ma gùrsán jiro	ma samèin jiro
2.	ma shegí jirto (jirtid)	ma gùrsán jirto (jirtid)	ma samèin jirto (jirtid)
	etc.	etc.	etc.

Conditional.

	I should not tell	I should not marry	I should not make
Sing. 1.	maan shègen	maan gùrsaden	maan samèyen
2.	maad shegten	maad gùrsaten	maad samèisen
3 m.	mau shègen	mau gùrsaden	mau samèyen
3 f.	maai shegten	maai gùrsaten	maai samèisen
Plur. 1.	maainu sheg- nen	maainu gùrsa- nen	maainu samèi- nen
2.	maaidin sheg- ten	maaidin gùrsa- ten	maaidin samèi- sen
3.	maai shègen	maai gùrsaden	maai samèyen

92. *The Derivation of the Continuative tenses.*

In § 86, three alternative types were given for the Continuative tense terminations,

-eya, -aya, -ahaya.

These are added to the Infinitive of the verb, but in the 1st Conjugation the final -i of the Infinitive is lost.

-aháya is the form used among *Dolbohanta* :

wa tegaháya	I am going
wa so'onaháya	I am walking
wa sinaháya	I am giving

-aya is the form used by the tribes of the North Coast and Western Somaliland :

wa tegaya, wa so'onaya, wa sinaya.

-eya, which is pronounced quite short, and nearly like -ya, is used by the Central tribes, such as *Habr Yunis* and Western *Habr Toljàla* :

wa tégeya, wa so'óneya, wa sineya.

The last two are contracted forms of the first, which is really a compound tense, in which the auxiliary verb, *ahai* be (modern *aho*,

q.v.) is used, with the Infinitive of the principal verb, as in the case of compound tenses.

In the Negative tenses this is more clearly seen, and here the 1st Conjugation retains the -i of the Infinitive.

The negative tenses of **ahai** are used as a separate word with the particles **ma**, or **an** :

shègi maháyo, or **shègi mayo** I am not telling
(for **ma-aháyo**)

In the past tenses the **ma** may be separated :

yèli mahain (for **ma-ahain**) } I was not doing,
or, **ma yèli ahain** } or, I would not do

These are contracted by *Ishhàk* tribes into

yèli maïn, or **ma yèlinin**

The Subjunctive Mood is similarly formed :

hadánu yèli ahain }
or, **hadánu yèlinin** } if he will not do.

93. (d) *Interrogative Conjugation.*

The Interrogative particle is **ma**, which, when combined with Personal Pronouns, becomes **mi**.

The Conjugation is otherwise the same as the Affirmative.

Indicative :

Aorist	mian shèga ?	mian gùrsada ?	mian samèya ?
Preterite	mian shègei ?	etc.	etc.
Contin. Pres.	mian shègeya ?		
„ Past	mian shègeyei ?		
Future Def.	mian shègi dònà ?		
Habit. Pres.	mian shégi jira ?		
„ Past	mian shégi jirei ?		
Conditional	mian shègi laha ?		

(e) *Negative-Interrogative Conjugation.*

94. Here the negative particle used is **an**.

No tense is declined except the Conditional, which is the same as in the simple Negative form.

Indicative :

Aorist	mianan shègin ?	mianan	mianan
Preterite	mianan shègin ?	gùrsan ?	samèin ?
Contin. Pres.	mianan shèginin ?	mianan	mianan
Contin. Past	mianan shèginin ?	gùrsáninin ?	samèininin ?
Fut. Def.	mianan shègi dònin ?	mianan	mianan
		gùrsan	samèin
		dònin ?	dònin ?
Habit. Pres.	mianan shegí jirin ?	mianan	mianan
„ Past	mianan shegí jirin ?	gùrsán	samèin
		jirin ?	jirin ?
Conditional	mianan shègen ?	mianan	mianan
		gùrsaden ?	samèyen ?

2. *Peculiarities and Irregular Verbs of the Three Conjugations.*(a) *1st Conjugation.*

95. These verbs have the root ending in any consonant, aspirate, guttural aspirate (**gh** or **kh**), or “*aine*,” or **ô**.

The following changes take place in certain letters when they occur together :

l followed by **t** become **sh**.

n, after **l** or **r**, is often assimilated to either of the latter.

t, after ‘, **gh**, **kh**, **hh**, **ô**, and **i**, becomes **d**.

Examples,

dil kill, hel get, yel do, dagàl fight

Aorist.

Sing. 1.	dila	hela	yèla	dagàla
„ 2.	disha	hesha	yesha	dagàsha
Plur. 1.	dilla	hella	yella	dagàlla
„ 2.	dishan	heshan	yeshan	dagàshan

dir	send...1st Plur. Aorist	dirra, or dirna
dírir	fight... „ „	dírirra, or dírirna
jir	be ... „ „	jirra, or jirna.

ra'	accompany...2nd sing. Aorist	wad ra'da
da'	fall ... " "	da'da
dagh	graze ... " "	daghda
bagh	fear ... " "	baghda
bahh	go ... " "	bahhda
jehh	tear ... " "	jehhda
ilô	forget ... " "	ilôda
fadi	sit (cf. § 109) " "	fadîda

Verbs ending in **n**, change **n** to **m** when it is preceded by two short syllables and the inflexions begin with a vowel.

	warran	give the news	dagâlan	fight
Infin.	warrami		dagâlami	
	<i>Aorist.</i>		<i>Aorist.</i>	
Sing. 1.	wan warrama		wan dagâlama	
„ 2.	wad warranta		wad dagâlanta	

96. In the case of Polysyllabic verbs, of which the last syllable is short and contains the vowels **a, o, u**, these vowels are dropped in the Continuative Tenses, and in those persons of all Simple Tenses in which the inflexion does not begin with a consonant, i.e. in 1st and 3rd masc. sing. and 3rd plur.

g becomes **k** before a vowel or **t**.

Examples,

Root		Infin.	Aorist	Contin. Pres.
arag	see	arki	arka	arkeya
dulun	cheat	dulmi	dulma	dulmeya
durug	move	durki	durka	durkeya
gògol	make the bed	gògli	gògla	gògleya
hadal	talk	hadli	hadla	hadleya
húrud	sleep	hurdi	hurda	hurdeya
khatalan	err	khatalmi	khatalma	khatalmeya
ghosol	laugh	ghosli	ghosla	ghosleya
jèdal	whip	jèdli	jèdla	jèdleya
makhâl	hear	makhli	makhla	makhleya
orod	run	ordi	orda	ordeya
rehan	pledge (pawn)	rehmi	rehma	rehmeya

Examples of Conjugations of the above,

arag	see	hadal	talk	dulun	cheat	makhâl	hear
-------------	-----	--------------	------	--------------	-------	---------------	------

Aorist Indicative.

Sing. 1.	arka	hadla	dulma	makhla
„ 2.	árakta	hádasha	dulunta	mákhasha
Plur. 1.	áragna	hádalla	dulunna	mákhalla
„ 2.	áraktan	hádashan	duluntan	mákhashan

Present Continuative Indicative.

Sing. 1.	árkeya	hádleya	dúlmeya	mákhleya
„ 2.	árkesa	hádlesa	dúlmesa	'mákhalesa
Plur. 1.	árkena	hádlena	dúlmena	mákhaleña
„ 2.	árkesan	hádlesan	dúlmesan	mákhalesan

97. The following verbs (all containing the vowel *a*) change *a* into *e* or *i* in the Infinitive and the Continuative Tenses :

Root.		Infin.	Aorist Indic.	Contin. Pres. Indic.
tag	go	tegi	taga	tégeya
gal	enter	geli	gala	géleya
ka'	get up	ke'i	ka'a	ké'eya
da'	fall, or rob	di'i	da'a	dí'eya
na'	hate	ni'i	na'a	ní'eya
'gama'	sleep	gam'i	gama'a	gam'eya
bahh	go	bihhi	bahha	³ bahháya
dahh	travel	dihhi	dahha	³ dahháya
nahh	be astounded	nihhi	nahha	níhheya
tahh	put in line	tihhi	tahha	tíhheya
<i>Exc.</i> nàhh	be fat	nàhhi	nàhha	nàhheya
dagh	save	dighi	dagha	digheya
daba'	imprint	dabi'i	daba'a	dabi'eya

The following make Infinitives like the 3rd Conjugation :

da	leave	dein	daya	deineya
la	slay	lein	laya	leineya

98. Verbs ending in *ô*, require *b* after the root in all inflexions, except those beginning with a consonant.

d is used for *t* in the inflexions.

		Infin.	Aorist.	Continuative.
'atô	be tired	'atôbi	'atôba	'atôbeya
gabô	be old	gabôbi	gabôba	gabôbeya
ghabô	be cold	ghabôbi	ghabôba	ghabôbeya
hallô	be lost	hallâbi	hallâba	hallâbeya

¹ *makhhal* retains the *a* in these persons.

² Participle *gama'san* asleep.

³ The forms of the Contin. tenses of these verbs must be noticed. Cf. § 92.

		Infin.	Aorist	Continuative
hasô	converse	{ hasôbi	hasôba	hasôbeya
		{ hasàwi	hasàwa	hasàweya
ilô	forget	ilôbi	ilôba	ilôbeya
karô	defend	karêbi	karêba	karêbeya
‘ollô	be hostile	‘ollôbi	‘ollôba	‘ollôbeya
hambarô	fall heavily	hamba- rôbi	hamba- rôba	hambarô- beya
madô	be black	madôbi	madôba	madôbeya
weidô	be lean	weidôbi	weidôba	weidôbeya
mâlô	get possession of	mâlôbi	mâlôba	mâlôbeya

Aorist Indic.

Sing. 1.	wan ilôba	I forget
2.	wad ilôda	
Plur. 1.	weinu ilôna	
2.	weidin ilôdan	

99. **tag** (go), is irregular in the Preterite Indicative.

Sing. 1.	wan tegei	I went
2.	wad taktei	
3 m.	wu tegei	
3 f.	wei taktei	
Plur. 1.	weinu tagnei	
2.	weidin takten	
3.	wei tegen	

da' (fall, rob) forms either

de'ei, or **da'ei**, in the Preterite.

Its Aorist Subjunctive is

inan d'o.

Verbs in **-ahh** conjugate the Preterite as follows.

Example,

	bahh	go	
Sing. 1.	wan bahhái	I went	
2.	wad báhhdei		
3 m.	wu bahhái		
3 f.	wei báhhdei		
Plur. 1.	weinu báhhnei		
2.	weidin báhhden		
3.	wei behhén		

100. The verb **oll** (lie, be in, dwell), is irregular in the Present and Past Perfect Indicative.

Imperative	oll	dwell
Infinitive	olli	

Indicative :

Aorist	al	I dwell (Neg. ma al)
Preterite	il	I dwelt (Neg. ma ollin)
Contin. Pres.	ólleya	I am dwelling, I intend to dwell
„ Past	ólleyei	I was dwelling
Fut. Def.	olli dōna	I am going to dwell
Habit. Pres.	ollí jira	I am accustomed to dwell
„ Past	ollí jirei	I used to dwell
Conditional	ólli laha	I would dwell, or would have dwelt

Subjunctive :

Aorist	inan ollo	that I may dwell
Continuative	inan ólleyo	that I may dwell

	Aorist Indic.	Preterite Indic.
Sing. 1.	al	il
2.	tal	til
3 m.	yal	yil
3 f.	tal	til
Plur. 1.	nal	nil
2.	tàlin	tillen
3.	yàlin	yillen

Note that the consonants denoting the persons are *prefixed* to the verb, and that there are no personal endings in these tenses (except in 2nd and 3rd plur.).

The Negative form of the Present is the same as the Affirmative.

ma al	I do not dwell
ma tal	
etc.	etc.

(b) *2nd Conjugation.*

101. In this Conjugation the root ends in **o**, and the Infinitive is formed by adding **n**, but in a great many cases the **o** is changed to **a**.

This change may also take place in both Simple and Continuative tenses.

In the Simple tenses **d** is added to the root, before adding the tense terminations, but in the 2nd pers. and 3rd pers. fem. sing. the **d** is lost, being assimilated into the **t** of the termination, and in the 1st pers. plur. the **d** is dropped before the **n**.

Table I.

102. The **o** in the Simple tenses is long, or at least as accentuated as the preceding syllable.

The consonant before the **o** is, **h**, **sh**, **k**, **g**, **j**, or **'**, or **y**.

		Infin.	Aorist	Continuative
amahho	borrow	amahhòn	amahhòda	amahhóneya
ashtako	complain	asktakòn	ashtakòda	ashtakóneya
gajo	be hungry	gajòn	gajòda	gajóneya
gasho	put on	gashòn	gashòda	gashóneya
harrago	swagger	harragòn	harragòda	harrogóneya
riyo	dream	riyòn	riyòda	riyóneya
so'ò	walk	so'on	só'oda	so'óneya
tasho	consider	tashòn	tashòda	tashóneya
tuko	pray	tukòn	túkoda	tukóneya

Table II.

103. These are Attributive Verbs formed by adding **o** to an adjective.

In conjugation **o** is changed to **a**, which is long in the Simple tenses.

		Infin.	Aorist	Continuative
ado	grow angry	adan	adàda	adáneya
bislo	become ripe	bislan	bislàda	bisláneya
damo	be completed	ðaman	ðamàda	ðamáneya
dôwo	approach	dôwan	dôwàda	dôwáneya
fogo	go far	fogan	fogàda	fogáneya
hhumo	become bad	hhuman	hhumàda	hhumáneya
idlo	come to an end	idlan	idlàda	idláneya
mergo	be entangled	mergan	mergàda	mergáneya
shishlo	grow fat	shishlan	shishlàda	shishláneya
weino	grow big	weinan	weinàda	weináneya

Table III.

104. Verbs ending in **so**, which is preceded by a consonant, or in **hho**, have the vowel of the Simple tenses short, but it may or may not be changed to **a**.

	Infin.	Aorist	Continuative
badso be plentiful	badson	bádsoda	badsóneya
bahhso escape	bahhson	báhhsoda	bahhsóneya
buhso be full	buhsan	búhsada	buhsámeya
bukso be cured	buksan	búksada	buksáneya
dafso exchange	dafson	dáfsoda	dafsóneya
'ehho be partial	'ehhon	'éhhoda	'ehhóneya
gürso marry	gürsan	gürsada	gürsáneya
hubso ascertain	hubson	húbsoda	hubsóneya
ghaibso take your share	ghaibson	gháibsoda	ghaibsóneya
ghállohho be bent	ghállohhon	ghállohhoda	ghallohhóneya
ghobso seize	ghobson	ghóbsoda	ghobsóneya
ibso buy for yourself	ibson	ibsoda	ibsóneya
jògso shop	jògson	jògsoda	jògsóneya
sehho sleep	sehhan	séhhada	sehháneya
tirso count for yourself	tirson	tírsoda	tirsóneya

In the verbs of this class the Aorist and Preterite tenses are found very frequently in a contracted form, in the 1st and 3rd masc. sing. and 3rd plural, the terminations being **-sha**, **-shan**, or **-sa**, **-san**, etc.

*Example,***ibso** buy*Aorist Indicative.*

Sing. 1.	wa ibsha	I buy	Plur. 1.	wa ibsona
2.	„ ibsota		2.	„ ibso
3 m.	„ ibsha		3.	„ ibshan
3 f.	„ ibsota			

			<i>Aorist.</i>	<i>Preterite.</i>
Similarly,	badso	makes	badsha,	badshei
„	ghaibso	„	ghaibsha,	ghaibshei
„	bahhso	„	bahhsa,	bahhsei
„	gürso	„	gürsa,	gürsei
„	bukso	„	buksa,	buksei

Table IV.

105. In the following verbs **o** is preceded by, **b, d, ð, f, gh, kh, l, n, r, s**. These drop the **o** in the Simple tenses, except in 2nd pers. and 3rd fem. sing. and 1st plur., in which the vowel usually appears as short **a** in 2nd and 3rd fem., and as **o** in 1st plur.

In all persons the **d** of the Simple tenses becomes **t**, except after **gh, kh**.

It, as usual, becomes **sh**.

*Example,***haïso** have got*Aorist Indicative.*

wa haïsta	I have got	wa haïsona
„ haïsata		„ haïsatan
„ haïsta		„ haïstan
„ haïsata		

	<i>Infin.</i>	<i>Aorist</i>	<i>Continuative</i>
bagho be afraid	baghan	baghda	bagháneya
baro learn	baran	barta	baranéya
ðalo be born	ðalan	ðasha	(ðalóneya)
damino be surety	damìnon	damìnta	(damìnóneya)
ðegeiso listen	ðegeison	ðegeista	ðegeisóneya
difo strike	difon	difta	difóneya

	Infin.	Aorist	Continuative
ḍimo die	ḍiman	ḍinta	ḍimáneya
ḍiso build for yourself	ḍison	ḍista	ḍisóneya
ḍòno look for	ḍònon	ḍònta	ḍònéneya
doro choose	doron	dorta	doróneya
ḍumo hide yourself	ḍuman	ḍunta	ḍumáneya
dabbalo swim	dabbalan	dabbasha	dabbaláneya
faḍiso sit down	faḍison	faḍista	faḍisóneya
farahhalo wash your hands	farahhalan	farahhasha	farahhaláneya
garo understand	garan	garta	garanéya
haïso have got	haïson	haïsta	haïsóneya
hedo tie on yourself	hedon	hedta	hedóneya
hiro shave yourself	hiron	hirta	hiróneya
ghado take for yourself	ghadon	ghata	ghadóneya
ghobo catch	ghobon	ghobta	ghobóneya
jèso turn yourself	jèson	jesta	jèsóneya
jido hurry on	jidan	jita	jidáneya
maido be washed	maidon	maidta	maidóneya
nasō take a rest	nason	nasta	nasóneya
nokho return	nokhon	nokhda	nokhóneya
sameiso make for yourself	sameison	sameista	sameisóneya

	Infin	Aorist	Continuative
sido carry, wear	sidon	sita	sidóneya
siso pay for	sison	sista	sisóneya
weidlso ask for	weidlson	weidlsta	weidl sóneya
lukho gulp	lukhon	lukhda	lukhóneya

The Irregular Verbs, imo, odo, ogho.

106. These verbs are declined irregularly in the Simple tenses, with the same peculiarity as the verb *oll*.

Note. The root from which the Simple tenses of **odo** are formed is related to the regular verb **yeđ** call, and also a verb **yađ**, found in songs :

Examples, **dabyera tehdo yada ba.**

"The little song I sing is like a shower of rain."

Yan sidi dánabka yèdei.

"I spoke like the lightning."

Imperative	imo come	(odo) ¹ say	ogho know
Infinitive	iman	odan	oghòn
Adject.	—	—	—
Noun	imad-ki	—	oghòn-ti
Indic. Aorist	imàda	idahhda or idahha	aghán
Preterite	imi	idi , or idahhei	ighín
Contin. Pres.	imáneya	odáneya	ogháneya
„ Past	imáneyei	odáneyei	ogháneyei
Fut. Def.	iman dònà	odan dònà	oghòn dònà
Habit. Pres.	imán jira	odán jira	oghòn jira
„ Past	imán jirei	odán jirei	oghòn jirei
Conditional	imán laha	odán laha	oghòn laha
Potential	imàde	idahhde or idahhe	oghàde
Subjunctive :			
Aorist	imàdo	idahhdo	oghàdo
Continuative	imáneyo	odáneyo	ogháneyo

¹ Instead of the Imperative **odo**, the word **deh** is used.

Aorist Indicative.

Sing. 1.	imàda	idahhda, or idahha	aghán
2.	timàda	tidahhda, or tidahha	taghán
3 m.	yimàda	yidahhda, or yidahha	yaghán
3 f.	timàda	tidahhda, or tidahha	taghán
Plur. 1.	nimádna	nidahhna, or nidahha	naghán
2.	timadan	tidahhdan, or tidahhan	tagánin
3.	yimadan	yidahhdan, or yidahhan	yaghánin

Preterite Indicative.

Sing. 1.	ími, or ímid	ídi, or idahhei	ighín
2.	tími, or tímid	tídi, or tidahhdei	tighín
3 m.	yími, or yímid	yídi, or yidahhei	yighín
3 f.	tími, or tímid	tídi, or tidahhdei	tighín
Plur. 1.	ními, or nímid	nídi, or nidahhnei	nighín
2.	tímaden	tidahhden	tighínen
3.	yímaden	yidahhden, or yidahhen	yighínen

The Aorist Subjunctive of **imo**, and **odo**, is declined like the Indicative, with the Subjunctive terminations, **o** and **an**.

inan imàdo	hadan idahhdo
inad timàdo, etc.	hadad tidahhdo, etc.

The Aorist Subj. of **ogho** is regular : **oghàdo**, **oghàto**, etc.

The Negatives of the Aorist Indic. and Conditional are regularly formed, in the former by using the Aorist Subj., and in the latter by replacing the Aorist terminations by **en**; but in the verb **ogho** the Pres. Indicative is unaltered.

I do not come	ma imàdo	I would not	maan ímaden
I do not know	ma aghán	have come	

All other Negative forms are regular.

(c) 3rd Conjugation.

107. These verbs all end in **-i** or **-ei**, and form the Infinitive by adding **-n**. In the Simple tenses **i** becomes **y** for euphony before the tense terminations which do not begin with a consonant.

108. Certain Participles are irregular :

ingeji	dry	Part.	ingegan	dried.
wanăji	make good	„	wanăksan	good
hagaji	make straight	„	hagáksan	straight.
ghoi	make wet	„	ghoiyan	wetted

109. Certain verbs in *i* are conjugated like the first Conjugation, adding *-yi* in the Infinitive. These take *-d* instead of *-t* in the 2nd and 3rd fem. persons.

		Aorist Indicative			Contin. Pres.
Root		Infin.	1st pers. sing.	2nd pers. sing.	Indic.
‘affi	pardon	‘afflyi	‘affliya	‘affida	‘afflyeya
ahdi	swear	ahdlyi	ahdiya	ahdida	ahdlyeya
akhri	read	akhryi	akhriya	akhrida	akhryeya
‘aï	curse	‘aïyi	‘aïya	‘aïda	‘aïyeya
‘ari	ebb	‘ariyi	‘ariya	‘arida	‘ariyeya
awawi	dream	awawlyi	awawiya	awawida	awawlyeya
bakhti	die	bakhtlyi	bakhtiya	bakhtida	bakhtlyeya
bari	beseech	barlyi	bariya	barida	barlyeya
bari	be safe, well	barlyi	bariya	barida	barlyeya
dai	look	dalyi	daiya	daida	dalyeya
‘ei	cry	‘elyi	‘eiya	‘eida	‘elyeya
‘eri	drive away	‘eryi	‘eriya	‘erida	‘eryeya
fadl	sit, dwell	fadlyi	fadliya	fadida	fadlyeya
fòri	whistle	fòryi	fòriya	fòrida	fòryeya
gábei	sing	gábeyi	gábeya	gábeda	gábeyeya
haji	make a pil- grimage	hajlyi	hajiya	hajida	hajlyeya
oi	cry	oiyi	oiya	oida	oiyeya
silei‘	be tortured	silèi‘yi	silèi‘a	silèi‘da	silèi‘yeya

(d) *The Irregular Verbs aho, laho, wah.*

110. *aho* (be), is an Irregular Defective Verb of doubtful conjugation. It has the same peculiarity in the Present Indicative as the other Irregular Verbs, inasmuch as it places the Personal consonants *t*, *n*, at the beginning of the word.

Affirmative Tenses.

Imperative	aho	be
Infinitive	ahain	
Indicative :		
Present	wan ahai	I am
Past	wan aha	I was
Future	wan ahain dònà	I am going to be

Habit. Pres.	wan aháin jira	I usually am
„ Past	wan aháin jirei	I used to be
Conditional	wan aháin laha	I should be
Potential	an ahàde	I may be
Subjunctive	inan ahàdo	that I may be

111. It is only irregular in the Infinitive and Indicative. There are no Continuative tenses.

	Present		Past.	
Sing. 1.	wan ahai	I am	wan aha	I was
2.	wad tahai		wad ahaid	
3 m.	wu yahai		wu aha	
3 f.	wei tahai		wei ahaid	
Plur. 1.	weinu nahai		weinu ahain	
2.	weidin tihin		weidin ahaiden	
3.	wei yihin		wei ahayen	

112. When **aho** is conjugated negatively, it is only irregular in the Present Indicative.

	Neg. Pres. Indic.		Neg. Past. Indic.	
Sing. 1.	miihi I am not	maan ahain	I was not	
2.	miihid	etc.		
3 m.	maaha	Neg. Conditional		
3 f.	maaha	maan ahàden	I should not be	
Plur. 1.	miihin	maad ahàten		
2.	mai hidin	etc.		
3.	maaha	Neg. Subjunctive		
		inánan ahain	that I may not be	
		etc.		

113. This verb is used independently as in :

na's bad tahai	you are a fool
nin 'àjis bu aha	he was a lazy man
askàri ban aháin jirei	I used to be a soldier

But it most frequently occurs combined with adjectives, especially participles.

Such adjectives are pluralised in the Plural persons.

hedan	tied	wein	large
--------------	------	-------------	-------

Present Indicative Affirmative.

Sing. 1.	wa	héðnahai	I am tied	wa	weinahai	I am large
2.	„	hedántahai		„	weintahai	
3 m.	„	hedányahai		„	weinyahai	
3 f.	„	hedántahai		„	weintahai	
Plur. 1.	„	hedhedánnahai		„	waweinnahai	
2.	„	hedhedántihin		„	waweintihin	
3.	„	hedhedányihin		„	waweinyihin	

Present Indicative Negative.

Sing. 1.	ma	hedni	I am not tied	ma	weini	I am not large
2.	ma	hednid		ma	weinid	
3 m.	ma	hedna		ma	weina	
3 f.	ma	hedna		ma	weina	
Plur. 1.	ma	hednin		ma	weinin	
2.	ma	hednidin		ma	weinidin	
3.	ma	hedna		ma	weina	

Past Indicative Affirmative.

Sing. 1.	wa	hedna	I was tied	wa	weina	I was big
2.	„	hednahaid		„	weinahaid	
3 m.	„	hedna		„	weina	
3 f.	„	hednahaid		„	weinahaid	
Plur. 1.	„	hedhednahain		„	waweinahain	
2.	„	hedhednahaiden		„	waweinahaiden	
3.	„	hedhednahayen		„	waweinahayen	

Past Indicative Negative.

Sing. 1.	maan	hednahain	maan	weinahain
		I was not tied		I was not big
		etc.		etc.

114. The adjectival roots, òg (knowing), ja'al (liking), ogòl (agreeing), are similarly conjugated with **aho**, in the Present and Past tenses.

Pres. Affirm.			Past Affirm.		
wa	ògahai	I know	wa	ògaha	I knew
„	ja'alahai	I like	„	ja'alaha	I liked
„	ogòlahai	I agree	„	ogòlaha	I agreed

Pres. Negative		Past Negative	
ma ògi ¹	I do not know	maan ògahain	I did not know
ma ja'alihi	I do not like	maan ja'alahain	I did not like
ma ogòlihi	I do not agree	maan ogòlahain	I did not agree

Other tenses are formed according to the 2nd conjugation from the verbs,

ogho	know (q.v.)
ja'alo	like
ogòlo	agree

After adjectives ending in **a**, **h**, **ò**, the **t** of the Personal inflexions is changed to **d**.

wa lugoládahai	she is legless
wa garadléhdahai	she is sensible
wa dódahai	it is near

115. The verb **laho** (possess), is conjugated like **aho**.

	Affirm.	Negative
Imperative	laho	
Infinitive	lahain	
Indicative :		
Present	wa lehahai	má lihi
Past	„ laha	má lahain
Habit. Pres.	„ lahain jira	má lahain jiro
„ Past	„ lahain jirei	má lahain jirin
Future	„ lahain dóna	má lahain dòno
Conditional	„ lahain laha }	maan lahàden
Potential	an lahàde }	
Subjunctive	inan lahàdo	inanan lahain

Affirmative.

	Present		Past	
Sing. 1.	wa lehahai	I possess	wa laha	I possessed
2.	„ lehдахai		„ lahaid	
3 m.	„ lehyahai		„ laha	
3 f.	„ lehдахai		„ lahaid	
Plur. 1.	„ lehnahai		„ lahain	
2.	„ lehdihi		„ lahaiden	
3.	„ lehyihin		„ lahayen	

¹ The 1st Sing. Present Negative is contracted into **mòji**, or **mòyi**.

Negative.

	Present		Past	
Sing. 1.	málihi	I do not possess	ma(an) lahaín	I did not possess
2.	málihid		etc.	
3 m.	málaha			
3 f.	málaha			
Plur. 1.	málihin			
2.	málihidin			
3.	málaha			

116.

Uses of laho.

This verb is made up of the root **leh** (possessing), and **aho** (be).

In the Indicative the tenses of **aho** are conjugated in full, preceded by **leh**; but other tenses are contracted, as if from the root **laho**.

laho literally means "have possession of," "own."

gèl badan ma lehdahai ? have you many camels ?

nàg ma lehdahai ? have you a wife ?

[**hai** (have, hold), could not be used in these examples.]

The root alone is used in the following expressions :

anigà leh, adigà leh it is mine, it is yours
etc. etc.

dáktarkà leh,
or **dáktarki bu lehyahai** } it belongs to the doctor
nin bà leh it belongs to someone

Other idiomatic meanings :

mahhád lehdahai ? what have you to say ? what do you mean ? what is the matter with you ?

wuhhu lehyahai, dònì mayo, he means, he does not want to.

lába rubod ban ugu lehahai, I am owed two rupees by you.

The Past Indicative is used as an auxiliary with an Infinitive, to form the Conditional tense of verbs.

wa tégi laha I should go

It may also govern substantival sentences, introduced by **in** :

málihi inan ku ra'o, it is not my business to go with you.

inad berri takto bad lehдахai, you ought (have) to go to-morrow.

117.

wah.

The verb root **wah** is conjugated as an irregular defective verb, and is used as an auxiliary verb, meaning, "fail," "be unable," "cannot find."

It is only conjugated in the Present and Past Indicative, and in one tense of the Subjunctive.

Indicative.

	Present		Past
Sing. 1.	wahya, waiya, wai	I fail	wahyei, waiyei, wai
2.	weida		weidei, wei
3 m.	wahya, waiya, wai		wahyei, waiyei, wai
3 f.	weida		weidei
Plur. 1.	weina		weinei
2.	weidan		weiden
3.	wahyan, waiyan, wai		wahyen, waiyen, wai

Subjunctive.

Sing. 1.	waiyo
2.	weido
3 m.	waiyo
3 f.	weido
Plur. 1.	weino
2.	weidan
3.	waiyan

Examples (cf. §§ 146, 195, 274 note),

iman waiya	I, or he, cannot (or will not) come
so'on wai	I, he, or they cannot (fail to) walk
shakhèin waiyen	they would not (failed to) work
hadad tegi weido	if you fail to go
hadeinu gadi weino	if we fail to reach it
blyo meshà ka weina	we cannot find water there
ghori ka wein wa wai	I cannot find larger wood
mahhad u iman weida	why don't you come?
wa wai	I, he, or they cannot find it
la wah	one cannot find it, it cannot be found

118. (e) *The Passive Voice.*

There is no Passive Voice in the conjugation of the Somali verb.

It is translated in two ways :

- (i) by the Past Participle and the verb **aho**, cf. § 113;
- (ii) by the Indefinite pronoun **la**, with the 3rd pers. masc. sing. of the Active voice of the verb.

Here **la** is identical in meaning and construction with the French pronoun *on*, and means "they," "people," "one."

Examples,

wahha la yiði	it is said
wahhba lagu má falo	nothing is done with it
lei shègei	I was told
la na ghobsóneya	we shall be caught

In neither case can the Instrument be expressed. If required, the Instrument must be expressed as the Subject :

ninkan igu diftei I was struck by this man (this man struck me).

3. *Derivative Verbs.*

119. These are, Intensive, Reflexive, Attributive, Causative, and may be formed from either nouns, adjectives, or verbs.

120. (a) *Intensive verbs* express an emphatic, intensified or repeated action, and are formed by reduplication of the simple radical verb. These all belong to the 1st Conjugation.

Examples,

lab	fold	lablab	fold up	} i.e. many folds
fur	open	furfur	unfold	
goi	cut	gogoi	cut up in pieces	
dòn	want	dòndòn	look around for	
gur	pick up	gurgur	pick up all	
hed	tie	hedhed	tie up, pack up	
jehh	tear	jehhjehh	tear up	
shég	tell	shégshég	repeat word by word	

121. (b) *Reflexive verbs* imply doing something to or for oneself, or may be passive in meaning. They are formed by adding -o or -so to a noun or verb (words ending in i always take -so).

These are all of the 2nd Conjugation.

Examples,

fadi	sit	fadiiso	seat yourself, sit down
jòg	wait, be	jògso	halt, stop
jed	turn	jèso	turn yourself
hub	be sure	hubso	ascertain, assure yourself
bar	teach	baro	learn
gar-ti	justice	garo	understand
amahh-di	loan	amahho	borrow
dòn	want	dòno	find for yourself
bagh	fear	baghho	be afraid
dor-ki	choice	doro	choose
jìd	pull	jìdo	hurry on
maid	wash	maido	be washed, wash yourself
sid	carry	sido	carry for yourself, wear
ghad	take away	ghado	take for yourself
hir	shave	hiro	shave yourself
hed	tie	hedo	tie on to yourself
ghob	take	ghobo	catch, take hold of
		ghobso	" "
hai	have, keep	haiiso	have got, keep for yourself
ghaib-ki	share	ghaibso	take your share
ìb-ki	price	ìbso	buy, sell
samèi	make	samèiso	make for yourself
gür-ki	marriage	gürso	marry
kahhai	take, lead	kahhaiso	take to yourself
sì	give	sìso	pay for
weidi	ask	weidiiso	ask for yourself

122. (c) *Attributive verbs* are formed by adding -o to an adjective or participle, and are conjugated according to the 2nd Conjugation, the o being changed to a in all tenses and moods. This o gives the meaning of "become," and not "be," the latter being translated by aho.

Examples,

'ad	white	'ado	become white
-----	-------	------	--------------

bisil	ripe, cooked	bislo	become ripe, cooked
đô	near	đôwo	approach
gab	short	gabo	become short
hhun	bad	humo	become bad
fòg	far	fògo	go to a distance
shilis	fat	shishlo	become fat

Distinguish between the following tenses :

wa hhúnyahai	it is bad
wa hhumàda	it becomes bad
wa hhumáneya	it will become bad

{ fardahaiga ma shishla, my ponies are not fat.
 { farduhu meshatan ma shishlàdo, ponies do not get fat here.
 { hadi miyi lo kakháyo wa shishlàneya, if they are taken to the
 { jungle, they will get fat.

123. (*d*) *Causative verbs* imply the causing of an action or production of a state or attribute in some object. They are formed (i) by adding **-i**, or **-si** (**-si** always to a word ending in **-i**) to any noun or verb, (ii) by adding **-ei** to an adjective. They are all transitive verbs of the 3rd Conjugation.

Examples,

shakhei	work	shakheisi	make to work
dambei	be behind	dambeisi	put behind
'ab	drink	'absi	cause to drink
ghaib	share	ghaibsi	divide in shares
gab	be short	gabi	shorten
amùs	be silent	amùsi	make silent
dalòl-shi	hole	dalòli	perforate
habàb	loss	habàbi	cause to lose
ràd-ki	track	ràdi	follow the track
bad	be plentiful	badi	increase
durug	move	durki	remove, cause to move

Where the last letter of the radical is a guttural it is usually altered to **j**.

Examples,

dagħ	graze	daji	cause to graze
bagħ	fear	baji	frighten
jòg	wait	jòji	stop (<i>transitive</i>)
ingeg	be dry	ingeji	cause to be dry

hagag	be straight	hagaji	make straight
wanag	goodness	wanaji	make good
wereg	go round	wereji	cause to go round
also			
ghabô	be cold	ghabôji	make cold

Verbs formed from adjectives:

'ad	white	'adei	whiten
bisil	cooked	bislei	cook
kulul	hot	kululei	make hot
adag	hard	adkei	harden
fôg	far	fôgei	put afar off
dan	all, complete	damei	finish

The Verbs mentioned in § 97 alter **a** to **e**:

gal	enter	geli	insert
ka'	awake	ke'i	awaken, arouse

D. THE PARTICLES.

124. Particles are used in Somali to correspond to various English parts of speech, but cannot be actually translated, except by reference to the context of the sentence in which they occur. They cannot stand by themselves, but only in conjunction with other parts of speech, nor are they subject to any inflexions of any kind.

They may either have reference to a verb (Verbal Particles), or they may correspond to conjunctions (Conjunctive Particles).

The Verbal Particles may correspond to certain adverbs or prepositions.

The Conjunctive Particles may serve to introduce a principal or subordinate sentence, or they may act as links between two co-ordinate sentences or parts of speech.

1. *Verbal Particles.*

125. (a) Adverbial Particles.

wada	altogether, completely
kala	apart, separately
si	that way
so	this way

These may be used with any verb.

Examples,

fárdihi wada kénéa	bring all the ponies
la wada ghadei	they are all removed
kala durka	move apart, separate
kala dufo	stretch out
kala goi	cut apart
si so'o go on	so so'o come on
si jèso turn that way	so jèso turn this way
si gal go in	so gal come in
so wada kahhai	bring all

Other Adverbial Particles are :

ha, yan, ma, an. Negative Particles. Cf. §§ 91, 145.

ma. Interrogative Particle. Cf. §§ 94, 145.

wa, ba, ya. Affirmative Particles. Cf. §§ 138—144.

Further idiomatic meanings of **si** and **so** should be noticed :

si means "continue" an action

si shakhei continue to work

si baro continue to learn

so means "begin" to do something, or "go and" do....

so aròri hòlaha go and water the flocks

so lbso go and buy for yourself

so safei go and clean

126. (b) Prepositional Particles (**ku, u, ka, la**).

ku at, in, by means of, for :

biyo galáska ku shub pour some water into the glass

gèd bu ku hedna he was tied to a tree

'el bu ku da'ei he fell into a well

ga'anta ku ghobo hold with your hand

hadig ku hed tie with a rope

gèl bannu ku dírirra we fight for camels

u on account of :

mahhad u taktei P what did you go for?

to (a person) :

sirkálki u tag go to the officer

Fàrah u gei take to Farah

ka from, across, concerning :

mèsha ka kàli	come from that place
mèsha ka tága	go away from there
ka ghob	pour away
ka goi	cut off
dehhda ka taláb	go across the nullah
muska ka bòd	jump over the fence
wahhas wahhba ka gáran	I understand nothing about
mayo	that

la together with :

na la ra'	come with us
wa ku la hádleya	I am talking with you

2. *Conjunctive Particles.*

127. (a) *Introductory Particles.*

sô, or **shô** perhaps :

sô magàladu jòga	perhaps he is in the town
sô gáran maysid ?	don't you understand ?

mala, **malaha** (lit. thought) probably :

mala wa árarei	he has probably run away
----------------	--------------------------

bal. The meaning of this is impossible to express. It is used in the following constructions,

- (i) With Imperative: **bal káli** well, come
bal an ègo let me look, then

- (ii) With the particle **in**, introducing an indirect question :

weidi bal inei fògtahai	ask if it is far
-------------------------	------------------

(b) *Conjunctive Particles.*

iyo and (coupling two substantives)

o and (coupling two clauses).

-na and, also, (a suffix, usually introducing a fresh sentence)

-se but (a suffix).

ama, **mise**, either, or

in that } these usually require the Subjunctive mood.
hadi if }

Examples,

Fàrah iyo ániga, Farah and I.

órod o só ghad, run and fetch it.

wa adágyahai o lagu goin kari mayo, it is hard and cannot be cut.

ádiguna mahhad dònese ? and what do you want ?
isna wa tégei, he too has gone.
dabedédna, and afterwards.
wa jògei, ninkuse árarei, I was there, but the man ran away.
ama tag ama jòg, either go or stay.
ma shegtei mise ilòdei ? did you tell or forget ?
inad takto ban dòneya, I want you to go.
hadu yimàdo, i kàli, if he comes, come to me.

E. ADVERBS, PREPOSITIONS, CONJUNCTIONS.

128. With the exception of the radical particles given in the last section, these parts of speech are represented in Somali by substantival expressions.

129. Adverbs of Quality and Manner :

ain-ki	kind, sort
ainkan, ainkas	like this, like that
si-di	manner
sida, sidas, or sàs	so, thus

si is also used with an adjective, forming an abstract substantive :

si wanáksan	good manner
si hhun	bad „
si ‘ajis	lazy „

Such expressions with the particle **u** become adverbial.

Examples,

si wanáksan u samei	make properly
wa si ‘ajis u shakhèineya	he is working lazily

The following nouns are commonly used in this way with **u** :

àd	force, effort	hòs	downwards
mlyir	prudence	dib	backwards
khumàti	straightness	hor	forwards
kor	upwards	ghunyar	slowness

also the verb root **dakhso** hurry

Examples,

àd u heji	hold tight
mlyir u fùl	ride carefully
dib u jògso	stand back
dakhso u tag	go quickly

130. Adverbs of Time and Place:

Time: gor-ti, kol-ki, mar-ki, hađ-di, wà-gi. béri-gi, gélin-ki.

Place: mel-shi, hal-ki, hag-gi.

Time.

this time	gortan, kolkan, markan	another time	mar dambe
now	íminka, áminka	often	gor badan, mar badan
now at once	hađdan	sometimes	mar mar
now therefore	hađdaba	again	mar kăleh
then	gortas, kolkas, markas	at no time	kolla
soon	gor dô	first	horta
later on	hađdô, hađdôtò	once	kol, gor
before	kolki hòre, marki hòre	twice	lâba gor
afterwards	kolki dambe, marki dambe, dabadéd	yet, still	wèli
formerly	kol hòre, wàgi hòre, bérigi hòre	never always	wèligi gor walba

Place.

here	halkan, mèshan	above	dùsha
this way	haggan	beneath	hòsta
there	halkas, halkà, mèshas	in front	hòre, horti, ka hòre
that way	haggas	behind	dambe, ka dambe, ka daba
yonder	halkò, haggò	inside	gudaha
near	mel dô	outside	dibadda
far	mel fòg	aside	ges
somewhere	mel, melun	on that side	gestà
everywhere	mel walba	around	harèro
nowhere	mella	in the middle	dehhda

(For hours, days, months, etc., see Appendix.)

131.

INTERROGATIVE ADVERBS.

of what sort ?	ainma ?
how ?	side ?
how much ?	inte ?
why ?	mahha u ? (cf. § 195)
when ?	gorma ?
at what time ?	hadma ?
how often ?	imisa gor ?
how long	halkyo gorma ?
where ?	halke ? hagge ? melma ? me ? meyei ? medei ?
how far ?	inte ?

132.

PREPOSITIONS.

The simple prepositions (to, for, from, with, etc.) are represented by the Particles (cf. § 126).

Other prepositions are represented by Adverbial Nouns, the word governed being placed in the possessive (cf. § 201). This may be done by using the adverb alone, with the governed word following it in the possessive position, as

sidi na's	like a fool
gorti dagalki	at the time of battle

Or the adverb is used with the possessive adjective, as

akhalka hortisi	in front of the house
joniad gudahèda	inside a bag

as, like	sidi	outside	dibaddisi
at the time of	gorti, kolki, marki	beside	gestisi
before	hortisi	around	harèrodisi
after	dabadisi	between, among	dehhdisi
until	hadyo inti	opposite	hortist
since	halkyo gorti	beyond	ka shishéi
near to	agtisi	on this side of	ka sòkei
far from	fògtisi	instead of	meshisi
over, on	dushisi	for the sake of	awadisi
under	hòstisi	behind	dambisi
in front of	hortisi	within	gudahisi
and,			
except	mahai	without	laän

133. RELATIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

when	gorti, kolki, marki
until	hadyo inti, inti
while	inti
since	halkyo gorti
before	intan (= inti-an, negative)
where	mèshi, halki, haggi
as much as	inti
as	sidi

F. INTERJECTIONS AND SALUTATIONS.

134. *Interjections.*

war	man, sir
na	woman, miss, madam

Examples,

war, 'ss ká tag!	go away, man!
na, ayà tahai ?	who art thou, woman?

warya! is used to draw attention.

-ô is added as a suffix to Proper Names in calling out to persons.

warya, Libanô! Hi! Liban!

ha yes

maya no

hoi hoi! a shout to attract attention

jog! an exclamation of astonishment

Wallahh! by God!

èga, Wallahh! lit. means "look, by God!"

dèga! lit. means "listen!"

Wallàhhi, iyo Billàhhi, iyo Tallàhhi. An Arabic oath

hauràrsan all right

ha ahàto so be it

wàtahai very well (lit. it is)

yelkìs that's his business, never mind

'ss ka da let be

'ss kà eg look out

Illàhhi maháddi thank God

Illàhhi ba òg God knows

kô, kôdi, haiye yes, well?

135.

*Salutations.***Nábad** Peace

Greeting		Reply	
¹ ma nábad ba ?	}	wa nábad	it is peace
or sô nábad miya ?		or nábad weiye	
ma nábad ghóbota ?	have you peace ?	wa nábad ghobta	I have peace
² mahhád shégta ?	what do you tell ?	nábad ban shèga	I tell peace
³ ma báriden ?	are you safe ?	ha, bárinei	yes, we are safe
sidè tahai ?	how are you ?		
'ss ka wárran	give news of yourself		
mèsha ka wárran	give news of the place		
ma bukta ?	are you sick ?		
ma buksánesa ?	are you getting better ?		
ma ladántahai ?	are you well ?		
wa ka sì dara	I am worse		

¹ The formal salutation.² The colloquial, informal greeting, "How do you do?"³ Corresponds to "Good morning."

PART III. SYNTAX OF SIMPLE SENTENCES.

A. THE STRUCTURE OF A SIMPLE SENTENCE.

1. *Order of Words.*

136. The usual order of a simple sentence, such as a command or statement, is

1. Subject. 2. Object. 3. Verb.

Examples,

o. *v.*
sor na si, give us food.

o. *v.*
fáraska kòrei, saddle the horse.

s. *o.* *v.*
nin ba libahh dilei, a man has killed a lion.

137. Adverbs may be placed anywhere except last. Adverbs of Time are usually placed first.

a. *o.* *v.*
háddatan aurta rèra, load the camels at once.

o. *a.* *v.*
fáraska dakhso u sò kahhai, fetch the horse quickly.

a. *s.* *v.*
markàsa ninki yidi, then the man said.

s. *a.* *o.* *v.*
habàrti ba habènki dambe àkhalki Suldàнка so ag martei,
the old woman on the following night passed near the Sultan's house.

a. *s.* *o.* *v.*
'ashodi dambe ya habàrti bariyo dònatei,
on the following day the old woman begged alms.

s. *o.* *a.* *v.*
ninka hòlihisi Burao bu gèineya,
the man is taking his flocks to Burao.

138. 2. *The Particles wa, ba, ya.*

These particles are of such universal occurrence, and so essential to idiomatic speech, that a correct understanding of their use is necessary at the outset. No one meaning can be assigned to them, as each may represent at one time a pronoun, at another a definite or indefinite article, at another the verb "is," "are," and at yet another time an adverb.

Their meanings may be divided into two classes :

(i) All three, **wa**, **ba**, **ya**, are Particles of Affirmation, just as **ma** is a Particle of Negation or Interrogation.

wa draws attention to, and precedes, the verb.

ba, and **ya** (especially **ba**), draw attention to, and follow, the subject.

(ii) **ba**, and **ya** (especially **ya**), may be conjunctive or adverbial particles, often to be translated by "and so," "and then."

This usage is found in narratives.

139. (i) *As Particles of Affirmation.*

If used without either a personal pronoun or a particle, a verb is considered abrupt.

Compare **ba** and **wa** in the following examples :

(*Note. In these cases ba and ya are synonymous, and either form may be used equally, but ba is preferred by Eastern and Central tribes.*)

- | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. nin ba yimi | a man has come |
| 2. nin wa yimi | a man has arrived |
| 3. Fàrah ba yimi | Farah has come |
| 4. Fàrah wa yimi | Farah has arrived |

1, 3 mean respectively that "it is a man that has come," and that "it is Farah that has come."

2, 4 mean respectively that "a man (as expected, or ordered) has arrived," and that "Farah (as expected, or ordered) has arrived."

In the first case the information relates to the individual who has come ; in the second case it relates to the arrival of some known person.

In short, **ba** emphasizes the identity of the subject, while **wa** emphasizes the meaning of the verb.

140. This explains the fact that **wa** may be used with a verb when no subject is expressed, and **ba** may be used when no verb is expressed.

Examples,

wa imáneya	he is coming
wa wanáksányahai	it is good
sádehhdas ba wanáksan	those three are the best
ma Árab ba ?	is he an Arab ?
nin ba la dilei	a man has been killed
hòlihi wa la da'ei	the flocks have been looted
hòlihi răg Musa Ismail ba ka da'ei	Musa Ismail's men looted the flocks

141. **ba** thus distinguishes the subject from the object where otherwise it would be doubtful.

Examples,

nin libahh ba ghobtei	a lion caught a man
nin ba libahh ghobtei	a man caught a lion

142. Special uses of **wa**.

(a) **wa** assists or emphasizes the meaning of the verb, but especially emphasizes an affirmation in reply to a question, expressed or understood.

ma imáneya ? ha, wa imáneya.

Is he coming ? Yes, he is coming.

ma garanésa ? ha, wa garanéya.

Do you understand ? Yes, I understand.

(b) **wa** means "is," "are," where the complement is a noun or numeral, and not an adjective.

wa nin hhun	he is a bad man
wa shabèl	it is a leopard
wa áfar	they are four
wà kan	here he is
wà ke ?	which is it ?
wa kúma ?	who are you ?
wa inte ?	how much is it ?
wà mahai ?	what is it ?

(c) Where the complement of "is," "are," is an adjective, **wa** is used, but the verb **aho** (be) is also used, suffixed to the adjective.

hádalkas wa hhúnyahai	that arrangement is bad
la'agti wa 'ulùstahai	the money is heavy
sirkálka wa ògyahai	the officer knows
wàyahai, wàtahai	all right, so be it

(d) When the Preterite tense is used with **wa** it becomes a Perfect or Completed tense.

wa yimi	he has come
wa arkei	I have seen

143. Special uses of **ba** and **ya**.

(a) **ba**, or **ya**, emphasizes the identity of the subject, especially in reply to a question expressed or understood.

ya ku la rá'eya ? Fàrah ba i la rá'eya.
who is going with you ? Farah is.

'id ma timi ? ha, Jàma ba yimi.
has anyone come ? Yes, Jama has.

Suldàn ba ínan laha.
(there was) a Sultan (who) had a son.

(b) When the subject of a sentence is a numeral it nearly always requires **ba**, or **ya**.

soddon ba jòga	thirty are present
lába bá maghán	two are absent
ímisa ba jòga ?	how many are present ?

(Note. In the following cases only **ba** is used, and not **ya**.)

(c) **ba** is used in questions where the complement of "is," "are," is a substantive.

ma áur ba ?	is it a camel ?
ma Árab ba ?	is he an Arab ?
ma kaigi ba ?	is it mine ?
ma ísaga ba ?	is it he ?
ma lába ba ?	is it two ?

(d) In affirmative sentences, where the complement is an adjective, **ba** may be used, but the verb **aho**, be, is not then employed.

In this case **ba** may give a superlative sense to the adjective.

Illàhhi ba òg	God knows
nin ba maghán	one man is absent
báhalaha ghar ba hhun	some animals are bad
sádehhdas kán ba wanáksan	this is the best of those three

(e) **ba**, used after the object of a sentence, has a distributive meaning.

nin ba mid sì	give each man one
ain ba mel gòniah òiga	put each kind in a separate place
kol ba nin keliah ha yimàdo	let one man come at a time

(f) **ba** may give an indefinite meaning to a word of time or place; or is used with a verb, meaning "at all."

mel ba kú jira	it is somewhere or other
wahhba dònì mayo	I don't want anything at all
ha tégin ba	don't go at all
walba	every
lábada bá	both
sádehhdabá	all three
wahhad dòneso ba	whatever you want
mèshi ad tákto ba	wherever you go
kolba ad dòneso	whenever you want

144. (ii) *As Adverbial or Conjunctive Particles.*

ba and **ya**, in this sense, correspond to the English particles "now," "and then," "and so." Their position in the sentence has no relation to the subject, object, or verb, but follows the first phrase in the sentence.

("Phrase" here includes both unqualified nouns, or nouns with their attributes, whether adjective or relative clause, or adverbial expressions.)

ba is apparently not used except when the phrase is an unqualified noun, usually one which has already been referred to in the preceding sentence.

ya is always used after an adverb, or adverbial expression.

The examples illustrating these are taken from the stories, q.v.

Suldànkà nàg bu gùrsadei, suldànkì ba hajki ghobtei.
(p. 145, l. 2.)

Kolkàsei tidi, "Bèrka gènyoda ìnankàga." Ínanki'ba
suldànkì u yèdei. (p. 146, l. 7.)

"Galáhtaän ku so mermero." Galáhti ba ìnanki gènyodi
fùlei. (p. 146, l. 9.)

Mas ba lei hedei, maskas ba igu imáneya, o i 'uneya.
(p. 150, l. 21.)

Daràrti dambe, ya suldànkù yimi. (p. 146, l. 3.)

Dúhurki kolkei ahaid, ya wiyishi timi. (p. 148, l. 11.)

Ísago gèdka hurda, ya shanti ìnan u yímaden.
(p. 148, l. 16.)

3. *Simple Interrogative and Negative Sentences.*

145. The same particle **ma** is used in both kinds of sentences.
There are certain differences in its several uses.

The Negative **ma** is placed as near to the verb as possible,
while the Interrogative **ma** comes before any pronoun or particle
qualifying the verb (cf. § 236).

Examples,

{ blyo ma kú jiran ?	is there any water in ?
{ blyo ku má jiran	there is no water in
{ wahh ma lagu siyei ?	has anything been given you ?
{ wahhba lei ma sìn	nothing has been given me

When joined to the personal pronoun the interrogative particle
becomes **mi-**, while the negative particle is unaltered.

{ miad áraktei ?	did you see ?
{ maad arkin	you did not see
{ miu ku shègei ?	did he tell you ?
{ i mau shègin	he did not tell me

In both cases the pronoun is often omitted when the person
referred to is obvious from the context.

i ma shègin	(he) did not tell me
maärkin, or maärag	(I) did not see
bürta ma árkesa ?	do you see the hill ?
wahh ma dònesea ?	do you want anything ?

Interrogative **ma** may be separated from the pronoun by another
word. In this case **ban**, **bad**, etc. are used (see also § 229).

ma hálka bu tégeya ?	is it there he is going ?
ma nínkan bu ku díftei ?	is it this man that struck you ?

Where the subject of an interrogative or negative sentence is a noun, it is placed first in the sentence. Generally, in interrogative sentences the personal pronoun is required as well, but need not be used.

'ollku ma ká bahhai ?	has the army left ?
ninku miu arkei libahha ?	did the man see the lion ?
manta sirkálku Burao ma ghobóneya ?	is the officer going to Burao to-day ?

146. Questions expressing surprise are introduced by *sô* or *shô*.

Examples,

la'agta badan sô dònì maysid ?	don't you want all this money ?
sô gáran maysid ?	don't you understand ?
sô ma garanésa ?	surely you understand ?

Questions introduced by Interrogative Pronouns and Adverbs :

Examples,

ya ku shègei hádalkas ?	who told you that story ?
wa kúma ? ayà tahai ?	who are you ?
ayad árakei ?	whom did you see ?
ninmad u díbtei ?	to whom did you give it ?
mahhá ka da'ei ?	what has happened ?
'id ma la dilei ?	is anyone killed ?
adèrkà muhhu aurkas ka sísóneya ?	what will your uncle give for that camel ?
abbahà mahhá la yidáhha ?	what do you call your father ?
ídinma warákhdan Burao gèya ?	which of you will take this chit to Burao ?
fárasma buka ? ma aínabka ?	which horse is sick ? the black ?
mahhán la'ag ugu siya ?	why should I give you any money ?
mahhád ugu hedántahai meshà ?	what are you tied there for ?
'ollku gormu Kirrit ka bah- háya ?	when does the force leave Kirrit ?
hagge hòlahaiga ka takten ?	where did you leave my animals ?
ninkakan hagge bu ku diftei ?	where did this man hit you ?

gènyadi mèdei?	hámarku	where is the mare? where is
mèyei?		the bay?
hérodi sirakìshu fadída wa		where is the officers' camp?
hagge?		
halkiyo Bòhotleh intèi jirta?		how far is Bohotle from here?
intu mághana wa inte?		how long was he absent?
imisa rubod bu ku bihhlyei?		how many rupees did he pay
		you?
haggà búrta ká shishei sidu		how does the country lie
dulyahai?		beyond that hill?
bùrtà ka sòkei sidèi tahai?		how is it on this side?
jòniadà 'uleiskèda wa inte?		how heavy is that bag?
'elka ðererkìsu wa inte? (or		how deep is the well?
intu ðeràda?)		
bàhalkan wa ainma?		what sort of an animal is this?

In Negative questions introduced by "why?" (**mahha u?**) a special idiom is used with the verb **wah** (§§ 117, 195).

mahhad u dònì weida inad	why don't you want to go?
takto?	

4. *The Verbs of existence, and attributive verbs.*

147. These Verbs (be, live, stay, dwell, grow, exist, lie, be found, become) have an equal variety of corresponding Somali expressions, as **aho, oll, jòg, jir, fadì, laho, nokhó.**

(i) The Auxiliary verb "be" requires a complement in the form of noun, adjective or pronoun.

(a) This may be translated simply by **wa**, or **ba**, as shewn in the examples of those particles.

(b) Or it is translated by **aho**, which is used independently when the complement is a noun, or is combined with an adjective when the complement is the latter, and forms an Attributive verb. In the latter case **wa** is required as well, but pronouns are never used.

Examples,

nin wein ban ahai	I am a big man.
na's bad tahai (contracted	thou art a fool
into bàt'hai)	
nin fi'an miu aha?	was he a clever man?
Somàli miìhid	thou art not a Somali

askàri maäha	he is not a soldier
tollmä tahai ?	of what tribe are you ?
wa wanäksányahai	he is good
ma wanäksana	he is not good
la'agti ma 'ulústahai ?	is the money heavy ?

148. (ii) It may refer to the presence or existence of an object in a certain place.

(a) *jòg* is used when referring to animate objects.

Examples,

ninki ma jòga ?	is the man here ?
aurti haggàsei jògta	the camels are there
rägu imisa ba jòga ?	how many of the men are present ?

(b) *jir* is used of inanimate objects.

Examples,

wahh kähleh má jira ?	is there anything else ?
halkan mahha kú jira ?	what is there here ?
wahhba ku má jiran	there is nothing
biyo wa kú jiran	there is water in

oll (literally lie) is often used in this sense :

sanadúkhdi halkan tal	the boxes are here
akhalkaiga bu yal	*it is in my house
kitábki meska dushìsi yal	the book is on the table
biyo badan ba yàlin	there is plenty of water

(c) *oll* (dwell, live), also refers to people :

Examples,

tollma halkan yal ?	what tribe lives here ?
Burao-einu nil	we lived at Burao
hagge ollí jirten ?	where used you to live ?

fadi is used with same meaning (lit. sit, abide) :

Examples,

magalodaän fadíya	I stay in the town
Berberu fadíya	he stays in Berbera
hagge sirakìshu fadída ?	where do the officers dwell ?

(d) When referring to the existence of animals or plants, *laho* (possess) is used.

*Examples,***meshàsa ugaḍ ma lehdaḥai ?**

is there any game in that place? (lit. does that place possess game?).

gerenùk iyo ðèro bei lehdaḥai,

it possesses gerenuk and dero (or g. and d. are found there).

b'e'id málaha, there is no oryx there.**mel walba aus bei lehdaḥai,** there is grass everywhere.**dáreiga Nogàshu bei lehdaḥai,** the fig grows in the Nogal.

- (vi) **nokho** become
 'ss ka ḍig pretend

*Examples,***suldàn bu nòkhdei** he became Sultan**nàg bu 'ss ka ḍígeya** he is pretending to be a woman

B. THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

1. *The Article.*

149. A noun, which in English is qualified by the indefinite pronoun, a, an, or some, any, is used in Somali in its simplest form in an indefinite sense.

Suldàn ba ínan laḥa	a Sultan had a son
eĩ ba 'eíyeya	a dog is barking
kùrsi wein ban ðòneya	I want a big chair
fardo ba imáneya	some horses are coming
gèdo ban haĩsta	I have got some grass
hòlo ma lehdaḥai ?	have you any flocks ?
la'ag málihi	I have not any money

150. The Definite article suffix (§ 28) is used to define nouns in a particular or general sense.

151. -i is always used for the definite article where -u or -a are not required by the following rules.

152. -a (i) is used primarily in defining nouns, referring to objects or persons actually present, or in front of the speaker.

sandúkha ghaḍ remove the box (which is in front of us)
bein bu shègeya ninka the man is telling lies

Note. Where the noun in this sense is the subject of the sentence, it is more usual to use the demonstrative adjective -an this.

(ii) It is also used with a noun in a general sense when in the objective case (§ 153, (vi)).

(iii) With Definite nouns which are possessive, or adjectival :

ákhalki ninka	the house of the man
ínanki Suldànká	the Sultan's son
nin magáloda	a man of the town

even where the Possessive adjective is used ;

sirkálka ghalabkìsi the officer's luggage

(iv) With nouns used adverbially :

galáhta this evening **Isninta** on Monday

153. **u** is used in the following cases :

(i) With well-known persons or objects of nature.

Wadádku the Mullah (i.e. Mohammed Abdallah)

Sirkálku the Officer (i.e. as a soldier would say, referring to his own officer)

oghàshu shirka faǵída the headmen sit in council

ghorahhdu wa kulúshahai the sun is hot

ròbku wa gàdeya the rain is stopping

(ii) With persons or things already referred to, and about which one is talking, as in the following example :

A man brings a complaint that another man has stolen his camel ; the judge may ask :

hashu ma jògta ? is the camel here ?

or the man may say :

ninku wa árarei, the man has run away.

In this way it is used when referring to a character in a story who has already been mentioned, as :

Suldànkú, ínankú, habàrtu, etc.

(iii) It is also used with the Personal pronouns in the Emphatic forms,

ánigu, ádigu, ádu, etc. (§ 55).

(iv) When a noun is used in a general sense, referring to all

members of a class, it is used in English with no article, but in Somali usually takes the article **-u**.

sirakīshu 'ano halad ma ja'ashahai? do officers like camel's milk?

nāguhu wa hádal badányahai women are great talkers.

(v) **-u** cannot be used with a noun which is qualified by an epithet. In such cases **-i**, or **-a**, only are found.

oghāshi Habr Yunis the H. Y. headmen

sirkálki hākinkaāha the judge-officer

(vi) **-u** is not used with a noun in the objective case. If a noun in one of the above senses is objective, **-a** is used (cf. *supra*).

gorma la ghobóneya Wadádka? when will the Mullah be caught?

154. The Definite Article may be used with any noun, numeral or pronoun, and is often used together with the Demonstrative Adjective and Possessive Adjective suffixes, q.v.

Where a definite noun is qualified by a numeral, it is the latter which takes the article, and not the noun:

lábadi nin the two men

2. The Noun.

(a) Cases.

155. There are no case inflexions in Somali, and the relation of a noun to the rest of the sentence must be recognised from its position or the context.

156. A general rule for subject and object was given in the first section on syntax, but this is subject to colloquial variation, where the meaning is obvious from the context.

Generally, the subject may be distinguished from the object by the gender and number of the verb, and pronoun, if the latter occurs, but only in cases where both are different.

ninki nāgti bu dilei the man killed the woman

nāgti ninki bei dishei} the woman killed the man

or **ninki nāgti bei dishei}**

Suldānki ba gartei nāgtīsi and the Sultan recognised his wife.
bérīgi dambe ya ínan, Suldān dalei, ya ínanti arkei Afterwards
 a son of a Sultan saw the girl.

ba, ya (§ 141) help to distinguish the subject.

dabku ya maska iyo hhaska bakhtiyei the fire destroyed the snake and the fence.

Here the subject is also denoted by the article **-u**.

The special forms of the pronouns, **wuhhu**, etc., following the subject, are used to make it clear.

‘ollki Habr Toljāla wuhhu dūlei Ali Nalēyah, the force of H. T., they attacked the Ali Naleyah.

Dative.

157. Some verbs may have two objects, one being in the dative case, or indirect object.

The usual order is to place the direct object before the indirect.

Fārah warākhdi sirkālki bu siyei	Farah gave the letter to the officer
gèdo fāraska si	give the horse grass
ninba tòban-an dībei	I gave each man ten

Motion *to a person* is expressed by the particle **u**, but motion to a place requires no particle, the place being translated as an indirect object.

Àli u tag	go to Ali
àghilki igu yimi	the headman came to me
aurti Sirkālki u gèya	take the camels to the Officer
Burao ban tégeya	I am going to Burao
Àli hòlihìsi rerkìsi bu gèineya	Ali is taking his flocks to his family

158. Nouns may be used adverbially, as in the last two examples, with verbs of motion or rest, or expressing duration of time. But if they are abstract nouns expressing manner or quality, **u** is required before the verb (see § 129).

Burao ban fadiya	I stay at Burao
lāba ‘asho beinu so‘onei	we marched for two days

159. The *Ablative* is expressed by the prepositional particle **ka**.

magālōdan ka imi	I have come from the town
-------------------------	---------------------------

‘ollku shāleito meshan ká bahhai, the army left this place
yesterday.

The *Possessive* Case (cf. § 45).

160. Nouns are used adjectivally, following another noun which they qualify, expressing origin, quality, value, use, space of time.

nin magāloda	a man of the town
nin dagāl badan	a great man for fighting
dagālki shālei	yesterday's battle

If the noun expresses material, profession, or nationality, it may be made into an adjective by the suffix **-ah** (being).

sandukh birah	a box of iron
nin Tomālah	a Tomal
lába nin o sirkālah,	} two officers
or lába nin o sirakil	
ninki askārigaāha	the soldier man

If it expresses the contents, or features, the suffix **-leh** is used.

balli biyoleh	a "pan" of water
nin gadleh	a bearded man

Features or clothes may be used alone descriptively.

nin san wein	a big nosed man
gholidi gambo ‘as	the party in red puggarees
nāgta maro ‘as	that woman in a red tobe
būrta figh der	that high peaked hill

161. The *Partitive* Case. "Some of," "any of," "one of."

The noun expressing the whole is either placed first in the sentence, parenthetically, or follows the noun expressing the portion, separated by the particle **o**.

rāgu in yer ba jōgta	a few of the men are here
sādehhdas ki u wanāksana wā ka	of those three that is the best one
aurtaida mid ba dīntei	one of my camels has died
wahh badan o hòlahaiga	plenty of my animals

(b) *Number*.

162. The plural of nouns is used as in English, wherever it is desired to express plural number, except after numerals.

nàguhu wa hádal badányahai	women are great talkers
wa askàrr hhunhhun	they are bad soldiers
oghàl bei nòkhdan	they become headmen
aurti timi	the camels have come

163. After numerals the plural number is only used in the case of feminine nouns, except those ending in **-o** (cf. § 42).

lába nin	two men	áfar 'asho	four days
lehh nàgod	six women	sádehh halod	three camels

(c) *Concord of Plural Nouns.*

164. In the Accidence (§§ 34, 76) it was noticed that the Guttural, and Dental, definite articles of the singular nouns are changed in the plural to Dental, and Guttural, respectively, except in the case of masculine monosyllables.

fas-ki	axe	plur.	fasas-ki
busta-hi	blanket	„	bustyal-shi
'asho-di	day	„	'ashoïn-ki
muda'-i	fork	„	muda'yo-di
sirkál-ki	officer	„	sirakil-shi
làn-ti	branch	„	lâmo-hi

This is more noticeable in irregular plurals, as :

aur-ki	he camel	plur.	aur-ti
àghil-ki	headman	„	oghàl-shi or àghilin-ti
Árab-ki	Arab-man	„	Árab-ti
il-shi	eye	„	indo-hi

This is comparable with, and is no doubt related to, the Arabic broken plurals, which are always feminine.

165. The plurals of the 1st class are true plurals, and adjectives and verbs always agree with them in number.

fasaska wa hhunhhúnyihin	those axes are bad
sumanki dàdera wa hallàban	the long straps are lost

In all other plurals, the adjective and verb should agree with the noun according to the form of the linking consonant alone, and not in number.

Compare the following examples :

nàgti wa imánesa (3rd fem. sing.)	the woman is coming
aurki wa imáneya (3rd masc. sing.)	the camel is coming
nimanki wa imáneyan (3rd plur.)	the men are coming
nàgihi wa imáneya (3rd masc. sing.)	the women are coming
aurti wa imánesa (3rd fem. sing.)	the camels are coming
Sirkálki ghalabkísi (3rd masc. sing.)	the officer's baggage
gabaddi bokhorkèda (3rd fem. sing.)	the girl's sash
Sirakishi ghalabkèda (3rd fem. sing.)	the officers' baggage
gènyadi wà tan (fem.)	there is the mare
aurki wà kan (masc.)	here is the camel
aurti wà tan (fem.)	here are the camels
sanadúkhdi weineid halkan tal (3rd fem. sing.)	the big boxes lie here
jòniadihi madana wa kú jira (3rd masc. sing.)	the empty bags are in
oghàl ba fadída (3rd fem. sing.)	some headmen are sitting

Note. The following case of false analogy is interesting, as shewing how in the Somali mind the article is the important factor to be considered in the concord of nouns with adjectives and verbs.

fardihi (the horses) is often contracted to **fardi**. In the latter case the feminine concord is most usual, as to the ear it appears that the article suffix is **-di**, the original masculine suffix **-hi** having been lost.

Example,

fardihi wa ka'dleineya (3rd masc. sing.)	} the horses are trotting
fardi wa ka'dleinesa (3rd fem. sing.)	

166. The plural nouns, **biyo**, **'ano**, **gèdo**, **hòlo**, **timo**, are treated as true plurals.

biyo ma yàlin	there is no water
'anihi wa kuan	here is the milk

wahhba (nothing) is usually considered plural:

wahhba ku má jiran	there is nothing there
---------------------------	------------------------

167. Adjectives qualifying plural nouns, when used indefinitely, usually agree in number (see note to 'Table in § 76).

nàgo wawein	some big women
Yibruhu wa niman hhunhhun	the Yibirs are bad men

168. When the noun is qualified by a numeral special rules for concord apply.

If the subject is indefinite (the numeral having no article suffix) the verb is used in the singular.

The masculine may always be used, but if the plural is feminine, and would take a dental linking consonant if definite, the feminine form of the verb may be used.

shan aur mlyigi ku bakhtlyei, or bakhtidei,
five camels died in the jungle.

lába nin ba yimi, two men came.

áfar nàgo ba yimi, four women came.

If an adjective qualifies the noun as well, it is used in the plural.

shan aur o hhunhhun ya bakhtlyei, five bad camels died.

If however the noun is definite, the verb may be either singular or plural; if it is singular it may agree in gender as with indefinite nouns.

shanti aur mlyigi ku bakhtidei, or bakhtiyen,
the five camels died in the jungle.

Where the noun refers to persons, the verb is usually used in the plural.

When the subject of the verb is a plural pronoun alone, or when the pronoun **wahhai** is used, the verb is always plural.

The following examples are taken from passages in the stories given in this book, and in Schleicher's *Somali Texte*.

shanti gabdod e kàleh wahhai ku diftan shan ínan o hodanah,
the five other girls struck five rich young men.

shanti ínan u yímaden, the five boys came to him.

lábadas u sarrèyen, those two were in command.

wahha ugu yimi abahèd iyo walalkèd,
there came to her her father and brother.

lehh aur ka haðei, six camels were left.

lehhdi aur, o lehh libahh 'unesa,
the six camels which six lions were eating.

shan iyo labàton nin, o hábsiga kú jirei, wahhai ghàten...
twenty-five men, who were in gaol, took... (Schl. p. 13, l. 12.)

sirkálka wuhhu direi askàro aur ku jogta,
the officer sent soldiers on camels. (Schl. p. 13, l. 18.)

markàsa sagàlki walàlahed tashàden,
Then her nine brothers considered. (Schl. p. 22, l. 18.)

áfarti walàlaäha ya tashàdei,
the four brothers considered. (Schl. p. 29, l. 21.)

lábadi odei ya yidi, the two old men said. (Schl. p. 30, l. 13.)

3. *The Adjective.*

(a) *Order and Syntax.*

169. It has been seen in the Accidence (§ 69) that adjectives follow the substantives they qualify, and are inflected to agree with them in gender and number (§ 75).

170. When a noun is qualified by more than one adjective, the second is coupled by the particle **o** (and).

kitáb yer o madô	a small black book
räg kâleh o wanâksan	other good men
dagahhânta wawein o 'ul'ulus	the big heavy stones

The adjective is coupled by **o**, if the noun is also qualified by a numeral.

lehh halod o hhunhhun	six bad camels
áfâr bákhalod o wawein	four big mules
lába nin o Habr Yunis	two men of the Habr Yunis

Note. When the word **kâleh** (other) is one of two epithets qualifying a noun, it is coupled by **e** instead of **o**.

o kâleh has a special meaning. Cf. § 177.

Example,

lehh gabdod e kâleh	six other girls,
but, lehh gabdod o kâleh	would mean, six similar girls

Where nouns are used adjectivally they follow the same rule.

sádehh nin o askàri	three soldiers
todòba nin o sirakil	seven officers

boghol, and **kun**, are treated adjectively also, and require **o** following them when more than one hundred or thousand is referred to.

lába boghol o askàri	200 soldiers
sádehh kun o adi	3,000 sheep

171. Attributive verbs are formed from adjectives, by the particle **wa**, and the verb **aho**, which is suffixed to the adjective (see Conjugations, § 114, and 142 (c)).

fāraskan wa wanāksányahai	this horse is good
sandukha wa fudúdyahai	the box is light
ràdadkan wa gabgabôyihin	these tracks are old

ba may be used with the adjective, without **aho**, but gives a superlative sense (§ 143 (d)).

kan ba wanāksan	this is the good one
ùshatan ba fudud	this stick is the lightest

Adjectives in **-leh**, **-la** may be split up into their component parts, the suffix being represented by the verb **laho**.

garad bu lehyahai	he is sensible
oghòn bu lehyahai }	he is wise
or wa oghòn lehyahai }	
garad málaha, }	he is foolish
or wa garad án lahain }	

(b) *Comparison of Adjectives.*

172. The particle **ka** is used before the adjective, and means "more than."

The object of comparison is treated adverbially, and is distinguished from the subject by its position, relative to the latter, in the sentence.

The adjective, describing the quality in which the comparison is made, is treated as part of the verb.

If the Subject of comparison is the subject of the principal verb, it precedes the Object of comparison.

If the Subject of comparison is the object of the principal verb, it follows the Object of comparison.

Types of simple Comparative Sentences.

S.	Adv.	O.	V.
{ ninkan	halkan	ákhā	bu ñiseya
{ this man	here	a house	he is building
{ ninkas	halka	ákhā	bu ñiseya
{ that man	there	a house	he is building

S.	Adv.	O.	V.
{ ákhalkan {this house	ákhalkas than that house		ka wein (is) bigger
{ ninkan {this man	ákhalkas than that house	ákhál a house	ka wein bu ñiseya bigger he is building
{ {	ákhalkas than that house	ákhál a house	ka wein so ñis bigger build
{ ákhalkan {this house	ákhalkas than that house		ma ka wein ? (is it) bigger ?
{ ma {	ákhalkas than that house	ákhál a house	ka wein ñisesa ? bigger are you building ?

173. In simple statements of comparison, the verb **aho** may be used with the adjective, or omitted.

kas ma kán gabányahai ? is this shorter than that ?

rágakan rágas ma ka badányahai ? are these men more numerous than those ?

rágas innagu ka badan, we are more than those men.

sanaddi hòre rági jògei, kana ka badan, there are more people here now than last year.

In three of these examples the usual order is inverted, owing to the subject being a pronoun, which is placed near the verb.

174. Certain words have a comparative meaning without the particle **ka**.

dàma better.

shúkhulka shukhul dàma saméya, do better work than that.

yerei make less **kordi** }
 badi } make more, increase.

u yerei, make it less.

mushahàrodaida ma i kordínesa ? will you increase my pay ?

175. **ka** may be used with certain attributive verbs, such as **fogo** be far.

inad A. ka fogàdo dònì mayo, I do not wish you to go further than A.

fàraskàgu fàraskaiga ka ma ñeréyo, your horse is not faster than mine.

176. The superlative may be expressed by *sà* (= *sida*) or the particle *ba*, or most commonly by *u*, or *ugu*.

wa sà wanáksan, it is best.

sà sà wanáksan, that is best.

sádehhdas kan sà der,
or *kan ba der*, } this is longest of those three.

wárankà ba fudud, that spear is lightest.

ísagu wa ugu wanáksányahai, he is the best of all.

rágakan ki u yera, the smallest of these men.

ínanti ugu yereid, the youngest girl.

biládkí Somálida hòlihi laga doflya mahha u badan ? of
the things which are exported from Somaliland, what is the chief?

177. (c) *Similarity.*

sida so, in the manner, as:

aurtayáda sida aurti waweineid blyo badan dòní mayso,
our camels do not want so much water as the big ones.

wa wanáksányahai sidádu o káleh, he is just as good as
you.

Jàma sida Abdi u wanáksányahai, Jama is as good as Abdi.
sida u ma weina, sida kàgi wahh badan ghadi mayo,
it is not so big, and will not carry so much as yours.

ó káleh the same as:

báhalka wein aur ó káleh weyei, that big animal is just
like a camel.

dagahas mid ó káleh, another stone like that.

lèheg resembling:

gèdkàsa lehh aur bu lèhegyahai, that tree is as high as
six camels.

bákhashi fàraska bei lèhegtahai, the mule is equal to
the horse.

kábahan ma iss-lèhega, those shoes are not a pair.

iss ku or *'ss ku* the same (equal to one another) (cf. § 250):

kala different (cf. § 239).

These qualify adjectives or abstract nouns:

wa 'ss ku lb, they are the same price.

lábadata wa 'ss ku der, these two are the same length.

'ss ku mid, the same.

rakabyada wa kala hòs, the stirrups are of different length.
sanadúkhda wa kala 'uleis, the boxes are of different weight.

wa kala wanáksan, they are not as good as one another
(are separately good).

Special idioms.

dóliskas 'elka ma gàdeya ? will that rope reach (be long enough for) the well ?

aurkása aurkaigi la hòg maäha, that camel is not so strong as mine (literally, that camel is not of strength with my camel).

4. *The Numerals.*

178. The number of nouns qualified by a numeral and the position of the latter has already been dealt with in the Accidence (§§ 42, 47), and in the Syntax (§ 163).

The concord of adjectives and verbs with numerals is dealt with in Syntax (§ 168).

179. The numeral in Somali is considered as a substantive, and may take any of the suffixes. Nouns which in English are qualified by a numeral are considered in Somali as qualifying that numeral adjectivally (§ 170).

sádehhdas aur o hhunhhun	those three bad camels
áfartan nef	these four animals
afártanka nef	the forty animals
sagálkaigi aur	my nine camels

180. When a numeral qualifies a pronoun, the possessive adjective is used in Somali suffixed to the numeral.

labadíni	you two
afartayáda	we four
lehhdòdi	they six

181. "One" when qualifying a noun is not translated.

one man	nin
one animal	nef
101 men	boghól iyo nin
101 animals	boghól iyo nef

kô is only used in counting consecutively.

mid is an indefinite pronoun, = "one."

182. Fractions. In describing a fraction of anything the Possessive Adjective is used.

half a bag	jòniad badkèd
give me a quarter of the camel	hashi wahhdèda i sì
a third of that belongs to me	inta dalolkèd ban lehahai

5. *The Pronouns and Pronominal Adjectives.*

(a) *Persons.*

183. The 2nd persons, singular and plural, are each strictly used according to the number of persons addressed. If only one person is spoken to, the 2nd sing. must be used.

There are two forms of the 1st person plural,

-einu, innagu (possess. **-en**) (inclusive form) include the 1st and 2nd, or 1st, 2nd, and 3rd persons ;

-annu, annagu (possess. **-aya**) (exclusive form) refer only to 1st and 3rd persons, and are not used when the 2nd person is included.

Illahhina, annaguna Illahhayága, innagu Illahhèna bu nòkhda,
your God and our God is the God of both of us.

184. The pronoun of the 3rd person singular has masculine and feminine forms. As the 3rd pers. fem. sing. and 3rd pers. plur. are the same, there is no question as to which pronoun is to be used in reference to a feminine plural. Where reference is made to a plural noun with the masculine article, when the pronoun is used in the presence of the noun, either singular or plural form may be used (see § 164 sqq.).

(b) *Simple Personal Pronouns.*

185. The Subjective Personal Pronouns (§ 53) are usually expressed with the verb, in addition to a nominal subject. They may be in their simplest form **-an, -ad**, etc., suffixed to any word in the sentence, or may be combined with the particles, **wa, ba, ya**, in the forms **wan, ban, yan**, etc.

yan, yad, etc., and **ya** ? are often lengthened into **ayan, ayad**, etc., and **aya** ? or **ayo** ? , but these seem to have no special meaning or use.

186. When the simple form is attached to a word ending in a vowel, this final vowel is usually dropped in speaking, especially in the conjunctions **gorti**, **halki**, **hadi**, etc.

gortasu yidi	then he said
ínankuse gènyu (gènyo-u) lehyahai	but the boy has a mare
gorm'u (gorma-u) yimàda ?	when does he come ?
kolk'annu (kolki-annu) 'ollki áragnei	when we saw the army
nàgti Suldank'u (Suldanka-u) la	he made friends with
sahhèbei	the Sultan's wife

187. As stated in Accidence (§ 54), **wan**, etc., is only used at the beginning of a sentence, while **ban**, **yan**, etc., are never used at the beginning but only in the middle, and usually as close to the verb as possible.

wan, **ban**, **yan**, are not used in Dependent or Relative clauses, the simple suffixed form only being found, attached to the conjunction, or, in Relative Adjectival clauses, where there is no relative pronoun, to the antecedent.

ninkad u yèdei yimi	the man you called has come
----------------------------	-----------------------------

188. The objective pronouns (§ 60) are placed between the subjective and the verb.

la'ag ban ku sineya	I will give you money
gormu idin no (na-u) direi ?	when did he send you to us ?

"it," "him," are usually omitted in Somali.

i si	give it to me	u gei fàraska	take him the horse
-------------	---------------	----------------------	--------------------

(here **u** is the particle and not the pronoun, cf. § 125).

189. When there is more than one verb in a sentence whose subjects are the same person, the pronoun is omitted with the second verb as in English. But if the subjects of the two verbs are different, the forms **anna**, **adna**, **isna**, etc., or **aniguna**, etc., are used (§ 56).

gortasan ka daba so'odei o so ghobtei,
then I followed after him and caught him.
kolkasan só marei, isna halkasu si so'odei,
then I came this way, and he went on there.

190. The Emphatic forms (§ 55) may be used followed by the simple pronouns or not.

ánigu wa shakheíneya	I am working
ánigu dólada ban ka sha-kheíneya	as for me, I am working for the Government

I myself, etc., are translated by certain words meaning "self," with the Possessive adjective.

naf-ti life	(ghud-di	sole, single	ruhh-hi spirit)
ánigu naftaida ku arkei	I saw you myself		
naftaidan ka shakheista	I work for myself		
annagu ruhhayaga magáloda yannu so áragnei	we have seen the town ourselves		

191. To do a thing for oneself is expressed by the derivative verbs in **so** (cf. § 121).

samei make	sameiso make for yourself
ibi buy	ibso buy for yourself

192. The compound forms **wahhan**, **wahhad**, etc., and **mahhan**, **mahhad**, etc., are important (§§ 57, 58).

The Somali likes to be very careful that he has the listener's attention, before he says what he has to say, and the forms **wahhan**, etc., serve to introduce a quotation or statement of an event, preparing the listener for the nature of the statement to follow. Thus in quoting a remark, after several interjections, as **warya! i degeiso! kôdi**, he will proceed with, **ninkasu yidi, wuhhu yidi**,... that man said, this is what he said,... and then will follow what he really did say.

These forms may be used with any kind of verb.

gortasannu tagnei, wahhannu tagnei, Olesan,
then we went, this is where we went to, Olesan.

They are nearly always used with verbs such as **dòn**, **malei**.

wahhan dôneya, inan manta tago	I want to go to-day
wahhan ù maleineya, inu árari dònò	I think he is going to run away

193. The 2nd person of this compound form is used to introduce instructions as to what a man is to do, followed by the Aorist indicative of the verb, as in the common expression to an interpreter (cf. § 217).

wahhad tidahhda	this is what you are to say
wahhad yesha	this is what you are to do

194. **mahhan**, etc., are interrogative forms.

mahhad dònese ?	what do you want ?
mahhan yèla ?	what am I to do ?

195. Followed by **u**, **ku**, these pronouns mean, 'Why?' 'This is why.'

wahas mahhad u tidi ?	why did you say that ?
wahhan ku idi	this is why I said it
mahhad u dònese hadig ?	what do you want rope for ? I
wahhan ku dònese, inan	want it to tie up the things
ghálabka ku hedhedo	with

If the verb after **wahhan u**, or **mahhan u**, etc., is negative, the verb **wah** is used (see Conjugation, § 117).

mahhad igu sheg weida ?	why do you not tell me ?
not, mahhad igu shegi maysid ?	
wahhan kugu shègi wai	this is why I do not tell you

196. The pronoun **iss** is both Reflexive and Reciprocal.

wu iss dilei	he killed himself
wa iss leineyan	they are fighting together

iss is used with **ku** and **ka** in special idioms (§ 248).

(c) *The Suffixes.*

197. The Definite Article suffix has already been dealt with in the Accidence and Syntax (§§ 29, 151—154).

The Linking Consonant, which is necessary to all, has also been described in the Accidence (§§ 24—27).

198. The three suffixes, Definite Article, Demonstrative and Possessive Adjectives, may each be used alone, or any two or all three may be attached to one noun.

The following are the possible combinations.

(a) Demonstrative and Definite Article (§ 31 (ii)).

The latter is attached without a linking consonant.

ninkanu, gèdkasa, kolkasi.

(b) Definite Article and Demonstrative (§ 31 (i)).

The Demonstrative when following the article takes a linking

consonant, which however is always **k** for masculine words, and **t** for feminine words. Only the **a** form of article is used.

ninkakan, ghorigakan, gabaddatan.

(c) Possessive and Definite Article (§ 32).

The Possessive adjective always requires a definite article suffix, except with names of relationship. The 1st and 2nd sing. and 1st (exclusive) plur. are the only persons which take the linking consonant.

ghalabkaiga, holahàgu, ninkai, inantlisi, etc.

(d) Possessive and Definite Article and Demonstrative.

The Demonstrative may be added to the above.

aurkaigakan	this camel of mine
shukhulkisakan	this work of his

(d) *Impersonal Pronouns.*

199. All the suffixes may be used independently as pronouns with the linking consonant **k** or **t** (§§ 62, 63). The Definite Article may be attached to the Demonstrative or Possessive Pronoun.

ki weina	the big one
kan ma aurkaigi ba ?	is this my camel ?
tan kàleh	this other one
tasu wa mid	that is one
kayága ba wawein	ours are the biggest
tisi wà ta	his is there

“There it is” is translated by **wà ta**, or **wà ka**.

200. All the suffixes have the same form whether attached to a singular or a plural noun, but the Demonstrative and Possessive Pronouns have special forms in the plural :

kuan, tuan ; kuer, tuer ; kuas, tuas ; kuaigi, kuàgi, etc.

The plural form of the Def. Article pronoun is **kuer**, or **kua, kui**.

The latter may take the Demonstrative suffix, as **kuakan, kuakas**.

(e) *The Possessive Adjective.*

201. The Possessive Adjective has certain special functions.

(i) It translates the Possessive case (§ 45).

ninki ákhalkisi	the man's house
habàrta ninkèd	the old woman's husband

(ii) It is used with adverbial nouns to form Prepositions (§ 132).

sandukhi dushl̥si	on the top of the box
meska hostisi	underneath the table
jòniada gudahèda	inside the bag

Such possessives, used with adverbs alone, translate a personal pronoun governed by a preposition.

hortina	in front of you
dehhdòda	between them
sidàda	like you

(iii) Where in English a personal pronoun is qualified by a numeral, in Somali the numeral takes the possessive adjective.

labadayáda	we two
afartíni	you four

In the same way the possessive adjective is used with indefinite pronouns (§§ 67 and 206).

intina káleh	the rest of you
---------------------	-----------------

The difference must be noticed between the examples,

labadaidi aur, or lábadi aurtaidi	my two camels
aurtaidi lába	two of my camels

(iv) It is used with the following words :

run	right	bein	lie
wà run	it is right	wa bein	it is a lie
wa runtai	I am right	wa beintai	I am lying
wa runtà	thou art right	wa beintà	thou art lying
wa runt̥is	he is right	wa beint̥is	he is lying
wa runtèd	she is right	wa beintèd	she is lying
wa runtèn	we are right	wa beintèn	we are lying
wa runtaya	we are right	wa beintaya	we are lying
wa runt̥in	ye are right	wa beint̥in	ye are lying
wa runtòd	they are right	wa beintòd	they are lying

(f) *The Interrogative Pronoun and Adjective.*

202. -e may be used either as a suffix (Interrog. Adj.) or as an Interrogative Pronoun, with the consonants **k** and **t**.

akhalke ?	what house ?
ke ?	which one ?

-ma is only used as a suffix (cf. § 65).

ninma ? what man ?

ninma ku shègei ? what man told you ?

ya ? **aya** ? **ayo** ? what ? who ? whom ? (cf. § 185).

ya ku sìyei ? who gave it to you ?

ayad áraktei ? whom did you see ?

mahha ? what ? (objective).

mahhad dònese ? what do you want ?

mahhad ku fálesa ? what are you doing it for ?

-ma suffixed to a pronoun, means "which of ?"

idinma ? which of you ?

annama ? which of us ?

kuma ? who ? (impersonally)

203. The Possessive Pronoun and Possessive Interrogative Pronoun may be formed with the verb root **leh** having (cf. § 116).

anigà leh it is mine (or **anà leh**)

isagà leh it is his

etc.

These are more idiomatic than **wa kaigi**, **wa kisa**.

yàleh ? **kumàleh** ? whose ?

fàraskan yàleh ? whose is this horse ?

(g) *Indefinite Pronouns and Adjectives.*

204. (i) **la** is a pure pronoun, and is used to translate the passive voice of the verb (see § 118).

205. (ii) Substantival words, "some," "any," "all," "alone" (§§ 67, 68).

nin ba yimi

someone has come

'id ma ku taghán ?

does anyone know you ?

wahh ma dònese ?

do you want anything ?

sadehh ghof ba òntei

three persons have died

'idla

unaccompanied, alone

halkan ghar ba yal

some lie here

daur ba haðei

some are left

daur iyo labàton

twenty odd

in răg ba jògta
inti sàka timi
nin hebel
war, hebel O ?

some men are here
those that came this morning
a certain man
you, what's your name ?

206. When used with a Personal Pronoun in a descriptive sense, the Possessive adjective is suffixed (cf. § 201 (iii)).

intina kàleh
gharkòda
ninki kéligi tegei
annagu keligayága sameinei
gidigòd, damántod
kulligèni
ísagu goniglsi si so'odei

the rest of you
those few
the man went alone
we did it by ourselves
all of them
all of us
he went on separately

207. wèli-gi never, is used in the same way with possessives.

wèligai maan arag
wèligin arki maysan
wèligà hau nokhon

I have never seen it
you will never see it
never do it again

208. "Some," "a few," etc., in a partitive sense are translated as follows.

intina ghar ba hhun
inta bariska ba haðei, or
inta bariskaäh

some of you are bad
thus much of rice is left

(iii) *Indefinite Adjectives.*

209. "Many," "little," "few," "other," "every," "all."

These are usually used qualifying an indefinite pronoun (only *badan* and *yer* agree with the Definite Article).

wahh badan o baris la kàli
wahh ka yer i sì
răg badan
răga badan

bring us plenty of rice
give me less
many men
all those men (i.e. those many men)

răgi badna
fardo yer
nin un, mid un
inta kàleh aur gòniah u sàra
fardu o ðan

the many men
a few horses
any man, anything at all
put the rest on a separate camel
all the horses

wahh hoga o răgas	a few of those men
in yer o sanadúkhda	a few of those boxes
nefka gònigaäh	that animal apart

210. The Indefinite Pronouns are made negative by the suffix *-na*, but the verb is also used in the negative form.

ninna ma iman	no one has come
‘idna i ma arkin	no one saw me
midna maan tàbin	I did not touch one
wahh is used with <i>ba</i> :	
wahhba dònì mayo	I do not want anything
wahhba heli mayso	you will get nothing

6. *The Verb.*

(a) *The Moods and Tenses.*

211. *The Imperative Mood* has only one tense, and expresses a command, wish, or permission.

The 2nd pers. sing. is the Verb Root, from which are formed all other parts of the verb.

The 2nd pers. plur. is formed by adding *-a* (2nd conjugation *-da*)
tag, taga; jògso, jògsoda; shakhèi, shakhèya.

For the other persons the Aorist Subjunctive tense is used, with particles *an* (1st pers.) and *ha* (3rd pers.) in the Affirmative.

an tagno	let us go
ha yimàdo	let him come

212. The particle *bal* is very commonly used with the Imperative, but is hardly translatable.

bal en ègo	let me look then
bal kàli	come then

It is not used with the 3rd person.

213. The Negative Imperative may be emphasized by the particle *ba*:

	ha tégin ba	see that you don't go at all
or by	wèliga	never
	wèliga wahhas ha tàbin	never you touch that

214. The *Infinitive* is only used with auxiliary verbs,

dòn will jir be accustomed to laha would kar be able

wa ku shègi dònà I am going to tell you
halkas an fadlyí jirei that is where I used to live

(Note that the accent is placed on the last syllable of the *Infinitive* before jir, and, in the 2nd and 3rd Conjugations, before laha.)

ainkas ma ghobón lahaíd? would you have done like that?
ma so'on karta? can you walk?

The auxiliary and principal verbs are treated as one, and are not separated by any particles at any time.

ku ma arki karo I cannot see you
Somàlidu ainkas ma ghobon Somalis cannot do like that
karto

In the Future Definite, the auxiliary is often dropped.

wa yèli I am going to do it
u shègi I will tell him

The Infinitive is the basis from which all Imperfect tenses and most Negative tenses are formed.

215. The *Verb-Adjective* and *Verb-Noun* have been described in Accidence (§§ 15 (b), 72).

216. *Aorist Indicative.*

This tense ordinarily expresses a habitual or customary act, without the emphasis on the habit implied in the Present Habitual.

Siraklshu timir ma 'unta? do officers eat dates?
Tomàlidu iyo Midgu wa iss Tomals and Midgans intermarry
gùrsada
rèrkayága gù walba 'elasha- my family is accustomed to draw
tan ka so ðamín jira from these wells every summer

217. It also indicates what is to be done, or can be done :

hagge lò mara Burao? how (by what way) does one go
to Burao?
hilib magàloda malagaìbsoda? is meat to be bought in the town?
haggeinu tagna? wahhaidin where are we to go? you are to
taktan, Bòhotleh. go to Bohotleh (cf. §§ 192, 193).

wahhad tidahhda	you are to say this, or, do you say this?
ma tūra ?	am I to throw it away? or, shall I throw it away?
ma ku kena ?	shall I bring it to you?

218. The 3rd person of this tense is used to translate the Present Participle, or relative clause.

nin af yaghán	a man knowing the language
shimbir fórida	a singing bird
ísago gèdka hurda	while he was asleep by the tree

219. *The Preterite* expresses a completed act in past time.

shālei bu yimi	he came yesterday
Fàrah i shègei intanad iman	Farah had told me before you came

220. Or an act just completed at the present time (usually found with *wa*) (§ 142 *d*).

sirkálku wa tegei manta	the officer has gone to-day
shālei sirkálku tegei	the officer went yesterday

221. *The Present Continuative* expresses either a continuous action in present time, or an intention or willingness, as in English.

hagge tégesa ?	where are you going?
ákhal ban díseya	I am building a house
nàg ban gùrsáneya	I am going to marry a wife
la'ag ban ku síneya	I will give you money
mahhád iga sísónesa ?	what will you give me for it?
ma garanésa ?	do you understand (what I am saying)?

but, af Somàli ma gárata ? do you understand Somali ?
(*Aorist*)

222. *The Past Continuative* expresses a continuous, or incompleted action, in past time.

fáras ban fùleyei	I was riding a horse
-------------------	----------------------

223. *The Future Definite* is a deliberate statement of what is about to happen.

wa tégi dòna	I am going to go
mahhád yèli dònta ?	what are you going to do?

224. *The Present and Past Habitual* express a usual occurrence or habit.

subahh walba Fàrah ba auski	Farah usually fetches the grass
so ghadí jira	every morning
bérigi hòre Somàlidu fardo	formerly the Somalis used to
badan lahaín jirtei	possess many ponies

225. *The Conditional* is used whenever a condition exists, whether expressed or understood. It refers to all times, and cannot be used except in the Principal sentence.

wa ku sín laha	I should, or should have given you
hadan arko wa gáran laha	if I saw him I should recognise him

226. *The Potential* expresses suggestion, possibility, or probability, and is often used euphemistically for the Future Definite. It is very common in songs.

mala iman dône	he may probably come
insha Allahh wa la hele	please God, we may find it
an walálka dilne	we might kill your brother
iman dône iyo iman màyo,	he may come or not, I don't know
war ma hàyo	
wahha kasta ad áraktide, ha	whatever you may see, do not stop
jògson	
in kasta há jirte, wa gàdeya	however far it may be, I will reach it

227. *The Subjunctive tenses* are only used in Subordinate or Relative clauses, and will be dealt with in the sections referring to them.

(b) *The Persons.*

228. The 2nd pers. and 3rd fem. sing. are denoted by **t**, or **s**, in the tense termination.

The 1st pers. plur. is denoted by **n**.

The 1st pers. plur. of the verb has only one form for both the inclusive and exclusive pronouns.

The 2nd pers. plur. must always be used in addressing more than one person.

Concord of verbs with nouns has been described already under Syntax of Nouns (§ 165).

229. The Emphatic pronouns **ánigu**, **ániga**, etc. (§ 55) have different constructions.

After the **-u** form ;

the verb is regularly inflected to agree with the various persons,

the particle **wa** is usually employed in Affirmative Sentences,

the particle **ma**, in Interrogative sentences, follows the pronoun.

ánigu wa tégeya

I am going

ádigu wa tégesa

thou art going

ídinku ma tégesan ?

are you going ?

íyagu tégi mayán

they are not going

After the **-a** form ;

the 3rd pers. sing. is used for all persons except the 1st pers. plur.

the particle **ba** is used in Affirmations,

the Interrogative particle **ma** precedes the pronoun.

ániga ba shakhèineya

it is I who am working

ádiga ba shakhèineya

it is thou who art working

ánnaga keligaya ba haðnei

we alone were left

ma ádiga arkei ?

was it thou who sawest ?

ma íyaga tégeya ?

is it they who are going ?

(c) *Formation of Negative Tenses.*

230. The Negative particles are,

ha used in 2nd pers. Imperative,

yan „ 1st and 3rd pers. Imperative,

ma „ Indicative mood, in Statements,

an „ Subjunctive mood, Dependent or Relative clauses, and Questions.

Forms of the Verb.

231. (i) *The Aorist Indicative* (statements) is conjugated like the Definite Subjunctive Affirmative, with the particle **ma**, and no Personal Pronouns.

ma jògo he is not here

232. (ii) *Conditional* and *Potential*. } *n* is added to the Affirmative Potential. This is conjugated with *ma* and the Personal Pronouns.

maan garten I should not understand

233. (iii) *Imperative*, *Preterite* and *Aorist Subjunctive* (statements). *n* is added to the Infinitive (in the 2nd and 3rd Conjugations the Infinitive already ends in *n*, and is therefore unaltered).

This is not conjugated in the persons, except in the Imperative, in which the 2nd pers. plur. takes *-a* in the 1st conjugation, *-ina* in the 2nd and 3rd conjugations.

<i>ha shègin</i> (2nd sing.)	do not tell
<i>ha dflina</i> (2nd plur.)	do not kill
<i>ha jògsonina</i> (2nd plur.)	do not stop
<i>yanu</i> (contracted to <i>yu</i>) <i>dilin</i>	let him not kill
<i>yanai</i> („ <i>yai</i>) <i>gùrsan</i>	let them not marry
<i>maan tegin</i>	I did not go
<i>inanad tégin ban dònèya</i>	I want you not to go
<i>maainu so'on karin</i>	we were unable to walk

234. (iv) The *Continuative* tenses of the *Indicative* and *Subjunctive* have already been described in § 92.

235. (v) In all *Negative Interrogative* tenses (except the Conditional), the particle *an* is used.

Simple tenses (Aorist, Preterite, Aorist Subj.) have the simple, Infinitive, form as in (iii).

Continuative tenses have the form used in Past Continuative (statements) and Continuative Subjunctive.

<i>mianan ku shègin</i> ?	do, or, did I not tell you ?
<i>mianad Sirkál la jògin</i> ?	are, or, were you not with an officer ?
<i>mianu imáninin</i> ?	is, or, was he not coming ?
<i>lmisa nin an téginin</i> ?	how many men are not coming ?
<i>lmisa nin busta án lahai</i> ?	how many men have no blanket ?

7. *The Particles.*

(a) *Order.*

236. The Verbal Particles and the Personal Pronouns are all placed in front of the verb. Where more than one are found to the same verb, they follow a strict rule as to their relative positions, having, so to speak, separate values, or affinities with the verb, so that the particle or pronoun having the greatest affinity with the verb is placed immediately before the verb, the others preceding it in the order of their affinities, as in the following table.

(A has the greatest affinity, H the least.)

H	G	F	E	D	C	B	A	
ma ? (§ 145)	an (Neg.)	Pers. Pron. (subj.)	Pers. Pron. (obj.)	u	ma (Neg.) (§ 145)	so	kala	VERB
wa				ku		si	wada	
ba				ka				
ya				la				

Examples,

H G F E D B A	
mi-an-ad na la so wada kahain ?	did you not bring all with us ?
B A	
so kala ðiga	put down here separately
F E C B	
lei (la i) ma so ðibin	it has not been handed me
H D	
ma kú jira ?	is it there ?
D C	
ku má jiro	it is not there
F E D	
mahhád igu sheg-weidei ?	why did you not tell me ?

(b) *Uses.*

237. Particles have been divided (§§ 124—127) into Verbal and Conjunctive.

The Syntax of Conjunctive Particles will be found in the section on Coordinate and Subordinate sentences (Part iv).

The Verbal Particles may be Adverbial or Prepositional. Adverbial particles, as the name implies, qualify the verb. (i) They indicate Affirmation, Interrogation or Negation (**ha, ma, an, yan, wa, ba, ya**). These have all their special uses and constructions. (ii) They may correspond to certain simple adverbs or prepositions.

The latter are used in close relation with a verb, and are an essential feature of the language. By suitable combinations a number of changes may be rung, a variety of meanings given to one verb, and expressions which would otherwise require paraphrasing put more concisely.

(c) *Adverbial Particles* (**wada, kala, si, so**).

238. wada (all, whole) may be used with the verb alone, or in addition to the indefinite parts of speech, **kulli, gidi, ó dan**, etc.

sanadúkhdi ó dan wada kéné bring all the boxes together
Somàlidu ó dan wa ku wáda taghán all the Somalis know you

239. kala apart, in different ways

sirakishi iyo aurti wa kála the officers are travelling apart
dahhaísa from the camels
side la kála garta? how does one distinguish them?
ninki hhuma iyo ninki wanák- do you know the difference be-
sana ma kála taghán? tween a good and a bad man?
wa kála jerébeya fardaha I am trying the ponies (for
 comparison)

It may be used with verbs, adjectives, or nouns (cf. § 177).

kala bihihi unfold, expand
kala dòro take your choice
wa kala derèyan they are not as fast as each other
wa kala der they are different lengths

240. si, so (§ 125) are used with the Verb Nouns as well as with other parts of the verb.

si so'odki the march out
so nokhodki the return

(d) *Prepositional particles (ku, u, ka, la).*

241. These cannot be treated as true prepositions, as they do not govern a noun, but only qualify the meaning of a verb in such a way as to render a preposition unnecessary.

tag go **Farah u tag** go to (approach) Farah
meshà ka taga go from (leave) that place
u tag go to (him), and **ka tag** depart, may be used alone, without any object being expressed.

These particles are not attached to the noun governed by the English preposition to which they correspond, while on the other hand they cannot be separated from the verb by any part of speech except other particles or a personal pronoun.

Examples,

ka taga meshà	leave that place
sandukha (the box) ghálabka	take out the things from the
ká bihihi	box
mahhád ku fálesa hadigà	what are you doing with that
(rope) ?	rope ?
wahhba lagu má falo	nothing is done with (it)

These particles are so much a part of the verb with which they are used that in many cases new meanings may be derived.

Example,

ka tag (leave, depart from) is used in the sense of leaving an object at a place.

lehh nin ba meshà laga tegei, literally, one went from six men there, i.e. six men were left there.

haggu ka tegei gèla ? where did he go from the camels ?
 i.e. where did he leave the camels ?

Other similar cases will be quoted under each particle.

242. **ku** (i) at, upon, in, into.

magàloda agtèda bu ku arkei	near the town he saw six girls
lehh gabdod o 'el ku maiḏóneya	washing at a well
gèd bu ku hedna	he was tied to a tree
nin fàras ku jòga	a man on a horse

'anihi yu sibràr ku lissei

the milk he milked into a skin

(ii) with, by means of.

ha mindi ku tàbin

do not touch it with a knife

wahhba laugu má falo

nothing is done with it

banadúkhdi bei ugu dishei

they shot them with the rifles

243. ku, or u for, on account of, for the sake of.

biyo bu ku maghányahai

he is gone for water

kolkasei haràd u bakhtiyen

then they died of thirst

gènyoda yan u gháleya ayodà

I am going to kill the mare for
your stepmother

lába rubod ban ugu lehahai

I am owed two rupees by you

mahhád u taktei ?

why did you go ?

244. u is used with certain nouns in an adverbial sense.

àd u hádal

speak up

dib u fadlso

sit back

dakhso u tag

go quickly

u to (a person).

sirkálka u tag

go to the officer

u dig

teach

245. ka from, out of, off

hagge ka tími ?

where have you come from ?

ghálabki sandukha ka so ghad

take the thing out of the box

hòlahaigi leiga hàdei

my flocks have been looted
from me

Idiomatic uses of ka.

mel walba an ka dòneyo, ka
wai

wherever I looked, I could not
find it

kolkei meshà ka ègen, wa ka
waiyen

when they looked there, they
could not find her

mahhád ka bághatei ?

what are you afraid of ?

ka tag go from, i.e. leave, is also used in the sense of leaving a
thing at a place.

lehh nin ba mèshà laga tégei

six men were left there

ínanki ba ínanti uga tégei wán

the boy left the girl a ram

across, over, through.

ka taláb

step across

ka bòd

jump over

hòggi dàrta bei ka so dustei

about, concerning, as to.

war ma ka haísa ninka ?

war ka ma hayo

dólada ban ka shakhèineya

lug ban ka jábei

mahhád uga hádlesa ?

mahhád iga sísónesa ?

she came through the hole in
the wall

have you news of the man ?

I have no news (of him).

I am working for the Govern-
ment

I have broken my leg

what are you grumbling at ?

what will you give me for it ?

246. kaga upon, against

kolkasu mádaha kaga díftei

wahhai riyotei iyadu laba shím-

birod lábada lugod kaga jògta
kaga rid

nin sirkál rasàs ba ku da'dei,

bòdodi kaga da'dei

then he struck it upon the head

she dreamed that two birds sat

upon her two legs

shoot

a bullet struck an officer, and

hit him on the thigh

247. la together with

In addition to having the simple meaning of the preposition,
la is used in certain euphemistic and other phrases.

la tag }

la so'ó }

la bòb }

steal, loot (literally, go off with)

la kàli

bring (a thing)

la sôrod (so órod)

bring (a person)

la jòg

halt, cause to halt

la bahso

escape with, save

la jòg, la fadiso

live with (as a servant)

248. The reflexive pronoun **iss** is used with the particles **ka**,
ku, **u**. It is usually contracted to **'ss ka**, **'ss ku** (pronounced **ska**,
sku).

249. iss ka, 'ss ka,

used in abrupt commands.

'ss ka tag

go away !

'ss ka bahha

get away with you !

'ss ka eg

look out !

'ss ka da

never mind !

With other tenses it may be translated by "just," "simply."

wa 'ss ka fadliya

I am just sitting down

wa 'ss ka dintei

he simply died (i.e. a natural death)

250. iss ku, 'ss ku, iss u with one another, together.

iss ku dowàda!

close together!

'ss ku lablab

fold up together

'ss ku tòl

sew together

iss u gei

bring together

iss u ðar, or 'ss ku ðar

mix together

tollollki wa iss ú jiran

the tribes are all together
(mixed up)

It is the opposite of **kala** (cf. §§ 177 and 239).

sidei iss kú yihin?

how do they compare?

'ss ku mid

the same

'ss ku toll

of the same tribe

'ss ku aba

(children) of the same father

'ss ku ìb

of the same price

PART IV. SYNTAX OF COMPOUND SENTENCES.

251. Compound Sentences consist of more than one simple sentence, and may be Coordinate or Subordinate.

A. COORDINATE SENTENCES.

252. Coordinate sentences are principal sentences, not dependent on one another, but connected by simple copulative or conjunctive particles, as “and,” “or,” “but,” and having their verbs in the same mood.

Conjunctive Particles.

253. *iyó* and (used only between two substantives).

Fàrah iyo áníga

Farah and I

or, in the following cases :

lába iyo sadehh

two or three, i.e. a few

hadad takto iyo hadi kǎleh

if you go or otherwise

*inei fògtahai iyo ín kǎleh so
hubso*

find out if it is far or other-
wise

254. *o* and (not used to connect substantives).

*kolkas askàrrti dibadda u bahh-
dei o ‘éridei*

then the soldiers turned out
and drove them away

It is also used,

(i) between two epithets governing one noun.

niman badan o wawein

many big men

lába fáras o wanǎksan

two good horses

lába askàri o fáras ku jògta

two soldiers on horseback

(ii) with the Indicative tenses of the verb to translate the English participles.

wahhai arken ínanti o ðlɾti faðíða	they saw the girl sitting in the trees
rèrkòdi o la da'ei bu arkei	he found his family looted
hòlihisi an ka ghadno, ísago (ísaga o) shirka ku maghán- yahai	let us loot his flocks while he is away at the council

(iii) as meaning because.

wa lo takhsìrei o íyagu shúk- hulki ghobon waiyen	they were punished because they would not do the work
--	--

(iv) in the idiom o mahai without (Conditional).

ha só nokhon o bándukhi heli mahái	do not come back without finding the rifle
ániga o fásahhi mahái ha ka tégina héroda	do not leave the enclosure without my leave

255. -na and, usually introduces a new subject.

ádiguna mahhád dònesea ?	and you, what do you want ?
dabadédna	and afterwards
midna wa wanăksányahai,	one is good and one is bad
midna wa hhunyahai	.

-na followed by a negative verb means "no."

ninna ma jògo	no one is here
midna ma tegin	not one went

256. For other particles, see § 127, and Syntax of Compound Sentences, Final and Conditional.

B. SUBORDINATE SENTENCES.

257. A Subordinate sentence is one which depends on, or represents some part of speech in, the principal sentence, and is connected with it by a conjunction or relative pronoun. It may represent

Substantive, Adjective, or Adverb.

1. *General Rules.*

258. In all Subordinate sentences, if the verb is in Past time, the Indicative mood is used, except in Conditional sentences. In Present or Future time the Indicative or Subjunctive may be used.

The Subjunctive is used to express uncertainty, or what is in the mind of the speaker, while the Indicative is confined to definite facts.

The negative particle in all Subordinate clauses is **an** (cf. § 274, note).

2. *Adjectival Sentences.*

259. In English these sentences are usually introduced by a relative pronoun, "who," "whom," "which," etc., but the Somali has no such pronoun.

The clause therefore follows directly after the Antecedent, as in many cases in English.

Where the English relative pronoun would be the subject of the relative clause, no personal pronoun is used in Somali as subject to the verb in the clause.

nimanka, halkò fadliyan, u yed	call those men, who are sitting over there
askàrrti, hujuddas samèisei, takhsìr 'ulus bei lehдахai	the soldiers, who committed that crime, deserve a heavy punishment
ninki, áminkan¹ árkeyei, haggu² ka'ei ?	where has the man gone, whom I saw just now ?
fardihi, shàlei mējorku ibshei³, wa la'ag badna⁴	the ponies the major bought yesterday cost a lot of money
hòlihi, sàka la kénei, ma la só wada aròriyei ?	have the animals, which were brought this morning, been all watered ?
dadka, gèlìsi la da'ei, wa yimi	the people, whose camels were looted, have come
ninki, ai⁵ ákhalkìsa fadídei, yu ku yidi	he said to the man, whose house she was in

¹ *áminka an.*

² *hagge u.*

³ Cf. note to Table III. § 105.

⁴ Cf. § 114.

⁵ Pronounced as one word *ninkyai*. *ai*=she.

wilki, an wáranki ka ghadei, wa adáneya	the boy I took the spear from is angry
ninki, an hòla lahain, wahhba má taro	the man, who has no property, is of no use
fáraski, an biyo badan dònin, bilàdkan ku wanáksányahai ¹	the horse, which does not want much water, is good for this country

260. The particle *e*, followed by the Indicative mood, is used apparently as a relative pronoun, where the latter is the subject of the verb in the clause, usually when the antecedent is also qualified by another epithet, such as an adjective or numeral.

shanti ínan, e gábdíhi gùrsadei, u yímaden	the five boys, who married the girls, came
ínanka H. B., e gábaddaidi ye- reid gùrsadei, yan u díbei húkumka	I have given authority to the boy H. B., who married my young daughter

261. The Conjunction *o* is used with the Indicative mood to translate the English participles, or an adjectival clause, when it is literally only a coordinate sentence.

wahhan arkei lehh gabdod o 'el ku maidóneya	I saw six girls washing at a well
wahhai árakta lábadi shim- birod, o lábadi lugod kaga jòga	she sees the two birds sitting upon her two legs
rèrkòdi o la da'ei bu arkei, o 'oll da'ei	he found his family looted, looted by an enemy
wahha ugu yimi áfar nin, intas o midna an u gáranin	there came to her four men, none of whom recognised her

262. The Subjunctive mood is used in Present or Future tenses, where the relative clause refers to a group, class, sort, or purpose.

ninki shúkhuł dòneyo ha yi- màdo	the man that wants work let him come
gèli la lbíneyo mid ka kahhaiso	take for yourself one of the camels that are for sale

¹ Pronounced *wanáksényahai*.

mindì la kàli an kibisti ku bring a knife for me to cut
gogoiyo the bread with

biyo an 'abo i ken bring me water to drink

263. "He who," "they who," etc., are translated by the definite pronouns, **ki**, **kuer**, etc.

ki shàlei la ibsotei wa hòg the one that was bought yester-
weinyahai day is strong

kuer sàka yímaden wa jògan those who came this morning
 are here

kuer an busta lahain, iyo kuer those who have no blanket,
lehyihin and those who have

264. "That which," "something which," "what," are translated by **wahh**, **wihhi**.

wahhan ku idi yel do what I told you

wahhad kento i tus shew me what you bring

wahh lagu fadìsto i ken bring me something to sit on

wihhi ad heshei i sì give me what you found

3. *Adverbial Sentences.*

265. (a) *Temporal and Locative sentences.*

These are essentially adjectival clauses qualifying an adverb of Time or Place.

mèshi ákhalki la díseya bu he is sitting where the house
fadiya is being built

mahhád iss tídi markad wahhas what were you thinking of when
samèinesei ? you did that ?

kolkan imáneyei libahh ban while I was coming I saw a
arkei lion

meshian 'ashodi doweida jògei unload the kit where I stopped
ghálabka díga the other day

266. The Subjunctive is required when referring to any future time, or when the sense is general or indefinite.

kolki húkumka leidin¹ shègo when you are given an order,
wahhba weidina² don't ask questions

¹ la idin.

² Negative particle **ha** may be omitted after negative words, as **wahhba**, **weliga**, etc.

kolku yimàdo i so sheg	when he comes, tell me
mel wanáksan-einu degno so	go and find a good place for
dòn	us to camp

267. "while" is translated by *inti* or *o*.

intei habásha ghódeyen, yei ka	while they were digging the
gurgúratei	grave, she crawled away
ísago hajki ku mághana, ya	while he was away on the
nàgtisi dàdabtei	pilgrimage, his wife had a
	dream

268. until, as far as, *inti*.

intan so nokhdo meshà jògsoda	wait there until I come back
fadl inti shékada ðamáneso	wait until the story is finished
intad so'on karto so'o	go as far as you can

269. before that, *intan* (*inti-an*).

(Here *an* is the neg. part., and the *Verb* is used in the negative.)

intanan só nokhon ha ka tégina	don't go away before I come
	back
inteidinan déginin, ana wa idin	I will catch you up before you
gàdeya	halt

270. after, *kolki...dabadéd*.

kolkan Badwein ka tegei, da-	after I left Badwein, what
badéd mahhá ka da'ei ?	happened? (When I left B.,
	afterwards what happened?)
kolkad Bèrberah timid, daba-	it was found after you came to
dédto wa la hélei	Berberah
kolkad sidà yesho, dabadéd	after you have done that,
ákhalka gal	enter the house

271. (b) *Final sentences*: "in order that," *in*.

Always used with the Subjunctive.

magàloda ¹ ghobóneya inan	I am going to Berberah to
barls iyo tímir so dònito	fetch rice and dates

¹ magàloda *an*.

nimanka igu yèda, inan la	call those men that I may
hádlo	talk to them
meshà 'ss ka dūmo, inan lagu	hide there that you may not
arkin	be seen

272. (c) *Conditional Sentences.*

If, *hadi*.

A Conditional sentence consists of two parts,
the Protasis, or Condition or Assumption, and the Apodosis,
or Conclusion.

273. (i) *Assumptions.* Indicative mood in both.

hadad moskhin tahai, mahhád	if you are a pauper (as you
u shakhéison weida ?	say), why do you not work ?
hadánad moskhin ahain, mahh-	if you are not a pauper, why
ád u shakheísata ?	do you work ?
hadad magáloda tégesa, Sul-	if you are (really) going to the
dánka u tag	town, go to the Sultan
hadánu imáninin, sugi mayo	if he is not coming, I will not
	wait
hadad jògtei, mahhád ár-	if you were there, what did
esei ?	you see ?
hadánad jògin, sidad ògtahai ?	if you were not there, how do
	you know ?

274. (ii) *Future Definite Condition, or Promise.*

Protasis—Aorist Subjunctive.

Apodosis—Future Indicative or Imperative.

hadu yimàdo, u shègi dōna	if he comes, I am going to tell
	him
hadad tegi weido ¹ (or hadánad	if you do not go, you will be
tegin), wa lagu ghobóneya	caught

275. (iii) *Present or Past Unfulfilled condition (Imaginary).*

Protasis—Aorist Subjunctive.

Apodosis—Conditional.

hadeinu Bèrberah jògno, la'agti-	if we were in Berberah, I should
an ku sin laha	give you the money

¹ The verb *wah* (§ 117) is often used in Conditional sentences to translate the negative verb, in place of the particle *an* with a negative tense.

hadaneinu Bërberah jògin, if we were not in Berberah,
 wahha badan maan ku I should not give you so
 slyen much

hadad shālei takto, wa u if you had gone yesterday,
 ghobón lahaíd you would have caught him

hadánad Àdan ollí jirin, wah- if you had not been living in
 has maad gáraten Aden, you would not have
 understood that

276. (iv) *Future Indefinite Condition, or Suggestion.*

Protasis—Continuative Subjunctive.

Apodosis—Conditional, or Neg. Pres. Continuative.

hadannu berri tégeno, ninki- if we were to go to-morrow,
 annu ghobón lahaín we should catch the man

hadanannu téginin, ghobon if we were not to go, we
 mayno should not catch him

Note. In a long sentence the Conjunction, Neg. Part., and Pronoun, may be split up.

hadiad shúkhulka an dòneya if you do not do the work I
 anad ghóbonin, shukhul- wish, you are no good to
 kaiga ku má wanáksanid me

277. Whether...or... is translated by *hadi...iyo hadi...*

hadad dòneso iyo hadanad whether you want to or not, go
 dòninin, iss ká tag

or by *ama...ama*, followed by the Imperative.

ama ha samàdo ama ha hhu- whether it is good or bad, do it
 màdo, yel

278. “unless,” “without,” may be translated by *o...mahai*.

ha só nokhon, bandukhi o heli do not return, without finding
 mahái the rifle

279. (d) *Causal sentences.*

There is no conjunction meaning “because,” but *o* is used in the following way.

wa lagu takhsìrei o ádigu shúk- you were punished because you
 hulki ghobon wai would not do the work

wahhan ku adàdei, o íyagu laba I was angry, because they were
 sa‘adod ka ràgen two hours late

280. (e) *Concessive sentences* (although).

There is no conjunction, but **they** may be translated as the last, or paraphrased.

halkanad tillen, haddana daugi you do not know the road,
ma taghánin although you have lived here

281. The conjunctions ending in -soever are Concessive. They may be used with Subjunctive or Potential or Imperative.

wihhi kasta ad sameineso, whatever you may be doing,
meshà ka kàli come away from there

o is usually added to the Imperative.

wahh kasta makhla-o, ha so whatever you hear, do not
nokhóniṇa come back

dal kasta ghobo-o, si so'o however tired you are, go on

wahh kasta ha ku shègo, ha whatever he tells you, do not
makhlin listen

'id kasta ha gùrsado, wahhba whomsoever he marries, I will
u sin mayo give him nothing

In the following the Potential Tense is used.

wahh kasta an arke, jògson whatever I may see, I will not
mayo stop

in kasta ha ahàden, wa 'erlyena however many they may be,
 we will defeat them

in kasta há jirte, wa gàdeya however far it may be, I am
 going to reach it

wahh kasta ad áraktide, ha whatever you may see, do not
jògson stop

4. *Substantival Sentences.*

282. These sentences stand in relation to a Principal sentence, as Substantives, and may be either the subject or object of the principal verb (or an Indefinite Pronoun or Adverbial Noun). They are introduced by **in** (that), followed by the Subjunctive in Present or Future time, by the Indicative in Past time.

283. (a) *As Subject.*

in la jèdlo ma wanáksana it is not good to be whipped

inad hilibkas 'unto wa haràn it is unlawful for you to eat
 that meat

284.

(b) *As Object.*

(i) Indirect statement, thought, wish, etc.

wahhannu dònena inad sor we want you to give us food
na sìso

wahhan dònèya inan Àdan I want to go to Aden
tago, or inan Àdan tago ban
dònèya

wa ù maleineya in ròbku di'ì I think the rain is going to fall
dòno

kolkasu oghàdei in rǎg u yimi then he learned that men came
ínanti to the girl

kolkasa wadádki dama'ei inu then the priest tried to run
áraro away

285. (ii) Simple indirect questions.

inu yimi so hubso find out if he came

bal inei fògtahai so weidi go and ask if it is far

inu tégeyo iyo in kǎleh war¹ I do not know if he is coming
ma hayo or not

môyi inanu fùlan oghòn iyo I do not know if he does not
inanu dònin know how to ride or if he
does not want to

286. (iii) Indirect questions, introduced by interrogative pronouns.

'id ú yahai so dòn find out who he is

hadanad oghòn 'iddi goïsei, if you do not know who cut
mahhán ku samèya? them, what am I to do?

wuhhu dònèyo weidi ask what he wants

weidi bal wahhai ka baghá- ask what they are frightened of
neyan

i shég wahhai u shakhein tell me why they would not
wayen work

287. (iv) Indirect questions, introduced by interrogative adverbs.

hòluhu intei yihin ma ku did he tell you how many
shègei? animals there are?

¹ = I have no news.

so eg inti tambukhi lèheg- yahai	go and look how big the tent is
meshas intéi jirto war ma hayo	how far that place is I do not know
mel ú jiro garan wai	I do not know where it is.
gor u si so'óneyo war ma haisa ?	do you know when he is going on ?

5. *Oratio Obliqua.*

288. In narrative there is no oratio obliqua in Somali, but after the verbs, 'say' 'tell' (*oḍo*, *shég*), the oratio recta is repeated.

The pronouns, *wahhan*, etc., are generally used.

wuhhu yidi, "libahh ban arkei"	he said he had seen a lion
wuhhu yidi, "wa idin ka daba so so'oneya"	he said he would follow on after you
wahhad na tidi, "gèl badan beidin hélesan"	you told us we should get many camels
wahhad tidahhda, "sor ban dòneya"	tell him I want food
wahhad tidahhda, "'ss ka taga"	tell them to go away

289. In place of *wahha*, *wa ti* is often used with the pronouns.

watan ku idi, "só nokho"	I told you to come back
watad tidi, "'ss ka jòg"	you told me to stay
warákhdi me ? wa ti la gubei	where is the letter ? that was burned

APPENDIX I.

Seasons in Somaliland.

Jilal	January—March
(Kalil)	April
Gù	May—June (S.W. Monsoon)
Hagar	July—October (Karif on the coast)
Dair	November—December (N.E. Monsoon)

Names of months (corresponding to the Arabic).

<i>Arabic.</i>	<i>Somali.</i>
Moharram	Dago
Safar	Durahh hore
Rabia al Awal	Durahh dambe
Rabia al Akhir	Rajal hore
Jumad al Awal	Rajal dehhe
Jumad al Akhir	Rajal dambe
Rajab	Sà buha
Shaaban	Wà baris
Ramadhan	Sòn (or Soukad)
Shawal	Sòn fur
Dhul Kada	Sidatal
Dhul Hijjah	Arafo

Days of the week are the same as Arabic.

Monday	Isnin-ti	Friday	Jima'-i
Tuesday	Salasa-di	Saturday	Sabti-di
Wednesday	Rabuhh-i	Sunday	Ahád-di
Thursday	Khamis-ki		

Times of the day and night.

The Arabic times of prayer are freely used.

a.m. 6	wà beri } arorti }	sunrise		
6—8	subahh-di barghád-di hore barisád-di hore	early grazing early rice	} gélinka hore	
8—9	barghád-di barisád-di	grazing time rice time		
9—10	barghád-di kúluleid	hot grazing		
10—12	marki hadki so koreisa			
p.m. 12—2	had-ki } gàdid-ki }	noon		} 'asho-di
2—3.30	duhur-ki		} galáb-ti, gélinka	
3.30—6	ásar-ki			
6	makhrib-ki	sunset	} dambe	
6—7	fldki			
7—10	aweisin-ki			
10—12	sakhdi hore		} habèn-ki	
a.m. 12—2	sakhdi (dehh)			
2—4	sakhdi dambe			
4—6	arorti hore } saladdi }			

The time of day, etc.

arorta	in the early morning
sà ka	this morning
galábtà	this evening
manta	to-day
àwa	to-night
shàlei-to	yesterday
hàlei-to	last night
habèn hore	the night before last
shàlei galáb	yesterday evening
dorràd-to	the day before yesterday
'ashodi hore	} the other day
'ashodi doweid	
berri-to	to-morrow
berri arorta	to-morrow morning
sà dambe	the day after to-morrow
sà kub	the day after the day after to-morrow
habèn dambe	to-morrow night

APPENDIX II.

Money.

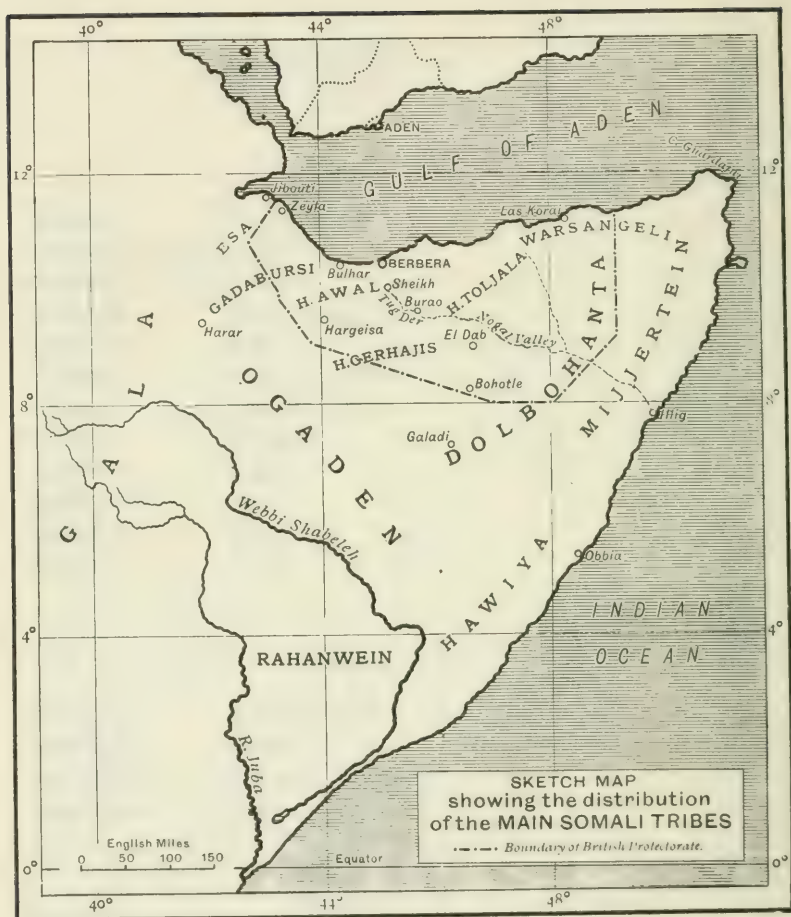
la'ag-ti	money, silver
mushahàro-di	wages
hisab-ti	account
sarrif-ki	small change
dahab-ki	gold
rubiad-di	rupee (pl. rubod)
rubi-gi	$\frac{1}{2}$ rupee, 8 annas
bòlad-di	4 annas
antln-ti	2 annas
gambo-di	anna
beisad-di	2 pies
ardi-di	1 pie

Weight.

misan-ki	weight, scales
rodol-ki	pound
nus rodol	$\frac{1}{2}$ pound
waghed-di	4 oz.

Measure.

ba'-i	"fathom" (roughly 5 ft. 10 in.) used in measuring rope
gedi-gi	a camel's march (about 9 miles)
laba gedi	a day's march
nus gedi	a half march (4 or 5 miles)



APPENDIX III.

A knowledge of the chief tribes of Somalis is important, in order to identify individuals, as, in any official description of a man, the native custom of describing him by name and sub-tribe is adhered to. The relationships of the tribes are also most important in any dealings with the people. These are very confusing at first, as, for instance, three brothers may correctly describe themselves respectively as Abdallah Ismail, Hersi Bareh, and Rer Sugulli, at first sight three different tribes.

The following are only the better known tribes; for further details, Cox's Genealogies may be consulted.

The inhabitants of the country are divided into

ASHA, or GOB	ISHHAK
(Noble birth)	
	DARUD
DIR	ESA
	GADABURSI
SAB (outcast)	HAWIYA
	TOMAL
	MIDGAN
	YIBIR

None of these eight tribes have any known relationship with one another, within the history of Somalis as a race, except perhaps the **TOMAL**, who are said by some to be a branch of the **DARUD**; and the **DIR**, who may be a branch of the **ISHHAK**.

The **ISHHAK** are divided into four, or usually five, great divisions, called

HABR AWAL	
HABR GERHAJIS	(EIDEGALLA
	HABR YUNIS
ARAB	
HABR TOLJALA	

The **ARAB** are a small tribe, and, though genealogically distinct, are more or less adopted into the **HABR GERHAJIS**.

HABR means "old woman," or "wife of."

ARAB, and **EIDEGALLA** are nicknames, the other are proper names, of the sons and grandsons of Sheikh **ISHHAK**.

The **HABR AWAL** are divided into

{	Saad Musa	{	Makahil	{	Musa Jibril	{	Ba Abdarakhman					
			Hussein Abokr									
			Jibril Abokr									
			Abdarahhman									
{	Esa Musa	{	Abdallah Saad	{	Abokr Jibril	{	Rer Wais					
			Mohammed Esa									
			Abokr Esa									
			Adan Esa									
									{			
										Damwadaga		
										Abdurahhman		
										Rer Idleh		
									{	Rer Farah		
										Rer Odowa		

The **EIDEGALLA** are divided into

{	Abokr Musa
	Rer Yunis Abdurakhman
	Ba Delo
	Gashanbur
	Damal Yera
	Rer Esa

The **HABR YUNIS** are divided into

{	Arreh Said	{	Ishhak	{	Abdillah Ishhak	{	Idris
					Kassim Ishhak		
		{	Musa Arreh	{	Jibril Adan		
					Musa Adan		
					Mohammed Adan		
					Ali Adan		
					Hassan Musa		
					Saad Yunis		
		{	Ismail Arreh	{	Musa Ismail		
					Abdallah Ismail		
							Musa Abdallah
					Omar Abdallah		
			Ali Said				

The **Omar Abdallah** are important as the Sultan's tribe, or Royal House, and are divided into a number of important sub-tribes.

Omar Abdallah	Ugad Omar—		Rer Hussein	
	Adan Omar	Gambur		
		Ba Dolbohanta		
		Hersi Barreh	Said Hersi	Rer Warsama (Rer Waraba)
			Abdi Hersi	Rer Weid Rer Abdi
			Ainanshe	Rer Ainanshe Rer Sugulli

The **ARAB** are divided into

Rer Othman Abdallah		
	Rer Ali	Ahmed Abdallah
		Rer Ali Adan Waraba

The **HABR TOLJALA** are divided into

Omar Abokr		
	Jibril Abokr	Musa Abokr
		Mohammed Abokr
		Adan Madoba Yessef
		Nuh
		Ahmed Farah Dahir Farah etc.

The chief divisions of the **DARUD** are

OGADEN
BARTIRI
ABSGUL
HARTI.....MIJERTEIN
WARSANGELI
DOLBOHANTA

The **DOLBOHANTA** are divided into

Mahmud Garad	{	Jama Siad	{	Naleyah Ahmed	{	Rer Jibril
		Ogarien Siad				Ali Naleyah (incl. Ba Idris)
Garad Farah	{	Ahmed Garad Mohammed Garad — Rer Naleyah or Ba Ararsama Barkad Garad	{	Nur Ahmed	{	
				Aligheri		
				Ararsama (incl. Rer Wais Adan and Rer Hagar)		
Abdi Garad	—	Rer Khair				

Note. Ba Idris, Rer Wais Adan, Rer Hagar, are three small sub-tribes which have intermarried with HABB YUNIS, and live with them in the district of Burao. They are included among the tribes friendly to the British Government, the other Dolbohanta having largely sided with the Mullah.

EXAMPLES OF PROSE AND VERSE.

The following stories and songs were dictated to me by Somalis of the Habr Toljale and Habr Yunis tribes¹, living at Burao.

The language used in the Prose Stories is exactly in the style of modern colloquial speech.

The sentences are very short and simple, and in ordinary conversation, especially in narrative, the speaker would hesitate after each one, in order that the listener might reply with some ejaculation expressing his attention or surprise. Such ejaculations are **Kôd**, **Kôdi** or **Haiye**, **Weiye**, meaning "Yes," "I see," "Go on"; or **Ďêga**, **Wallahh**, meaning "Really," "By God." **Wallahh** is usually replied to again by **Ega wallahh**.

Example,

A.	B.
A complainant I am.	Well?
Mashtáki ban ahai.	Weiye.
A camel someone from me has stolen.	Yes.
Hal ba leiga hadei.	Kôd.
Yesterday it was lost.	Yes.
Shálei bei ka hallàdei.	Kôd.
There beyond, the flocks were grazing.	Yes.
Hagga ká shishei, hòlaha wa dàjeyei.	Kôd.
When we were returning it was stolen.	Yes.
Gorteinu ka so nokhónenei leiga hadei.	Kôd.

¹ I—IV were told by an educated Somali, Mohammed Jibril, of the Habr Toljale, Musa Abokr, then serving as an office clerk.

V—IX were told me by a professional poet and story-teller of Burao, Ismail of the Habr Toljale, Rer Ahmed Farah.

X was told me by an interpreter called Ali, of the Habr Yunis, Musa Arreh.

A.	B.
There with it went two men, on horseback—By God !	
Wahha la tégei lába nin, o fáras ku jòga.	Wallahh !
and rifle carrying.	By God !
o bandukh sita.	Wallahh !
See by God !	Well ?
Ega Wallahh !	Haiye.
There it is. (That is all.)	What do you want ?
Wa inta.	Mahhád dònesa ?
I want,	Yes.
Wahhan dòneya,	Kôd.
that one may catch those men.	Where they went ?
in la ghóbsoto nimánka.	Haggei u ka'en ?
They are here, in the town they stay.	Really !
Wa jògan, magàlodai fadiyan.	Dèga !
By God etc..... this morning I saw	(them)
Wallahhi iyo Billahhi iyo Tallahhi ! sàka-an arkei.	

B.

Very well. A man soldier accompany, and shew him.
 Wàyahai. Nin sibaihh la ra', o u tus.

A.	B.	A.
All right.	Go away now.	Very well.
Hauràrsan.	'ss ká tag, háddaba.	Wàtahai.

In the fables and narrative which follow, these exclamations are omitted, but no Somali could tell a story, nor could another listen, without introducing them.

In a native court, or *banjād*, it is not uncommon for the counsel on one side to repeat the speech of his opponent sentence for sentence, or bit by bit, in order apparently to gain sufficient time to digest the full meaning properly. Repetitions are frequent and tedious, owing to this necessity for short, clipped sentences, and the absence of relative pronouns.

A speech or story is usually concluded by the expression **Wa sida**, or **Wa inta** There it is, That is all.

An excellent collection of some forty-five Somali tales, with German translations, is to be found in Schleicher's *Somali-Texte*.

I. HABIYO BUTIYA¹.

LAME HABIYO.

Suldàn bá jirei, ínan bu lahá². Ínanka hoyodisi ya ðimatei.
 A Sultan there was, a son he had. The son his mother died.
 Kolkasa Suldàнку³ nàg bu gùrsadei. Suldàнки ba hajki⁴ ghobtei
 Then the Sultan a wife he married. The Sultan the pilgrimage made.
 Nàgti Suldàнка⁵ ya Yuhòdi la sahhèbei, ínanki Suldàнка ya
 The wife of the Sultan a Jew with was friendly, the son of the Sultan
 Yuhòdigi la 'ollòbei⁶. Nàgti ya Yuhòdigi ku yidi', "Ínanka
 the Jew with was at enmity. The woman the Jew to said, "The boy
 an dilno." Kolkasei sorti sun ugu dartei. Ínankuse
 let us kill." Then she the food poison with it mixed. But the boy
 gènyu⁸ lehyahai, wahh walba taghán⁹, kolkasa gènyodi ínanki
 a mare he possesses, which everything knows, then the mare the boy
 ku tidi, "Ha 'unin sorta." Kolki sorti lo¹⁰ só ðigei, ya ínanki
 to said, "Do not eat the food." When the food was placed, the boy
 sorti didei. Málinti dambe ya Yuhòdigi u yimi¹¹ nàgti
 the food refused. The day following the Jew came to the wife
 Suldàнка, wuhhu yidi, "Kolka Suldàнки yimàdo, wahhad
 of the Sultan, he said, "When the Sultan comes, do you

¹ This is a good example of ordinary narrative style with its broken short sentences. It is also an excellent exercise in the uses of **ba**, **ya**, the adjectival clause, and the concord of plural nouns, upon which special notes are not given in many cases.

² **laho** means "have in possession," or "own," and is different from **hal**, have in the hand, hold.

³ Note article **u**, for "the above-mentioned Sultan."

⁴ i.e. the Mecca pilgrimage.

⁵ Article **a** for possessive case.

⁶ § 99.

⁷ address. **ku** is the particle. Cf. **wahhad ku tìdahhda** below. **yidi** is masc., and therefore the subject is **Yuhòdigi**, and not **nàgti**.

⁸ **gènyo u**.

⁹ From **ogho**. The Aorist is here used for Present Participle.

¹⁰ **la u**.

¹¹ **u** to (a person).

tidahhda, 'Wa buka.' Kolku ku yidahhdo, 'Mahha ku dawaä¹?' say, 'I am sick.' When he to you says, 'What you will cure?' wahhad tidahhda, 'Gènyoda bèrkèda.' Dararti dambe ya do you say, 'The mare her liver.' The day following Suldàнку yimi, kolkasei sàɴ gogoshei, o wahhai hòsta ka the Sultan came, then she a skin laid on the bed, and she underneath gélisei² 'àlen beirda. Kolkei ku sehhotèi, ya 'àlenti inserted a leaf of a fig-tree. When she on it slept the leaf jababa³ tidi, kolkasa Suldàɴki yidi, "Mahha ku haya⁴?" Kolkasei crackled, then the Sultan said, "What you has?" Then she tidi, "Fèdaha hanòneya." "Mahha ku dawaä?" Kolkasei tidi, said, "My ribs are hurting." "What you will cure?" Then she said, "Bèrka gènyoda ínankàga." Ínanki ba Suldàɴki u yèdei, "The liver of the mare of your son." The boy the Sultan called, wuhhu yidi, "Gènyodàda yan u gháleya ayodà." Kolkasu he said, "Your mare I will slay for your stepmother." Then he yidi, "Hauràrsan. E galábtá-an ku so mermero⁴." Galábtí said, "All right. This evening let me on it take a walk." In the evening ba ínanki gènyodi fùlei, kolkasu abihi ku yidi, "Abo, the boy the mare mounted, then he to his father said, "Father, nabad," o gènyodi la tegei. Wuhhu tegei, magàlo-u tegei. goodbye," and with the mare went. He went, to a town he went. Magàloda agtèdi bu ku⁵ arkei lehh gabdod o⁶ 'el ku maidóneya⁷. The town near he saw six girls a well at washing. Ínanti ugu yereid ya áraktei, kolkei ninki áraktei, bei 'elki The girl youngest saw, when she the man saw she the well ka so bahhdei, ninki bei ka hishótei. Kolkasu gènyoda from came, the man she concerning was ashamed. Then he the mare saintéda gubei, kolkasa gènyodi 'erka taktei. Ínanki ba wuhhu her tail burned, then the mare to the sky went. The boy he 'ss ka diga nin ádinla, magàloda bu galei. Wuhhu la pretended to be a man crippled, the town he entered. He lived

¹ dawa, 1st conjugation. The Aorist here means, "is to," or "can."

² gell. Causative verb derived from gal enter, § 123.

³ i.e. what is the matter with you?

⁴ go and take a walk.

⁵ at.

⁶ gabdod is qualified by a numeral and therefore the relative clause is coupled by o.

⁷ 3rd singular after Indef. plur., § 168.

fadistei¹ nin. Bérigi dambe ya gabdihi Suldanka ya as servant to a man. The time after the daughters of the Sultan yidi, "Wa gürsónena." Suldanki ba durban ku diftei², wuhhu yidi, said, "We will marry." The Sultan drum beat, he said, "Gabdahaiga ya gürsónena." Kolkasa inámodi hòdna ya "My daughters will marry." Then the young men rich iss u yimi, kolkas gabdihi ba la kenei, meidanki rágu together came, then the girls were brought, in the plain the men jògei. Kolkasa gabdihi la yidi, "Rága dònesan³ ma wada stood. Then the girls were told, "The men you wish are they all jògan?" Kolkas inanti yereid ba tidi, "Ninkan dòneyei ma here?" Then the girl young said, "The man I wanted is not jògo." Adònihi rága u yèdeyei ya la yidi, "Rága here." The slaves (who) the men were calling were told, "The men magáloda wada jòga u yèda." Kolkasa inanki adinkálaa⁴, (that) in the town all are call." Then the boy cripple, e Hàbiyo Butiya, yu⁵ u yèdei. Kolkasa Suldanki gabdihi weidiyei, Hàbiyo Butiya, they called. Then the Sultan the girls asked, "Rági ma wada jòga?" Kolkasei yidahhden, "Ha." Gabdihi "The men are they all here?" Then they said, "Yes." The girls ya lo ðibei lehh hábadod⁶ o linah. Wahha la yidi, "Ínan were handed six oranges. It was said, "Girl walba ninkei dòneso ha ku dífato." Shanti gabdod e káleh⁷ every the man she wants let her strike." The five girls other wahhai ku diftan, shan ínan o hòdanah, inanti yereid ya ku dífatei they struck, five young men rich, the girl young struck Hàbiyo Butiya. Kolkasa nahhdinti-ai ka náhhen ya abahèd Hàbiyo Butiya. Then with horror they were astonished her father iyo hoyodèd indo bèlen. Ínanki ba inanti yereid gürsadei. and her mother eyes lost. The boy the girl young married.

¹ lit. sit with. An idiom meaning "be servant to." la jog has the same meaning.

² difo is used with ku, meaning "strike."

³ The pronoun is omitted.

⁴ adinla is inflected to agree with article -ki.

⁵ ref. to adónihl.

⁶ "articles," often used in this way with numerals.

⁷ káleh is the second epithet, but o is not used as o káleh has a special meaning, § 177.

Daràrti dambe ya la yidi, "Suldànkà iyo nàgtìsa wahha u
 The day following it was said, "The Sultan and his wife there
 dawaä 'ano wiyiled." Inámodi shanti gabdod gùrsadei,
 cures milk of rhinoceros." The young men the five girls married,
 shan fàras o wanáksan ba la sìyei, ínankina Hàbiyo Butiya dabeir
 five ponies good were given, and the boy Habiyo Butiya a donkey
 ba la sìyei. Kolkasa magàloda-ai ká behhen'.
 was given. Then the town they from departed.

Ínanki Hàbiyo Butiya, ya gènyodìsi sainti u gubei, gènyodi
 The boy Habiyo Butiya, his mare the tail he burnt, the mare
 ba u timi, kolkasu darkìsi dahabkaäha iyo sèfti intas u
 to came, then he his clothes of gold and the sword that he
 gashodei².
 put on.

Kolkasu gènyodi fùlei. Kolkasa gènyodi dùshei, 'erkas yei
 Then he the mare mounted. Then the mare flew, that sky she
 ghóbotei. Kolkas wuhhu taga mel wiyili ku dashei,
 reached. Then he goes to where rhinoceros was born,
 wiyishi yereid bu dohhei, sànti bu kala bahhai, 'o'ob bu
 the rhinoceros young he skinned, the skin he stretched out, a figure he
 ka samèyei. Dúhurki kolkei ahaid ya wiyishi timi,
 from it made. The afternoon when it was the rhinoceros came,
 ínanki Hàbiyo Butiya ya 'ss ka ñigei ðalkèda, 'anihi yu
 the boy Habiyo Butiya pretended to be her young, the milk he
 hohhdi³ sibràr ku lissei, gudulkina sibràr ku lissei.
 the first part a skin in milked, and the second a skin in (he) milked.
 Wiyishi ya gèdo dònatei, kolkasa ínanki 'o'obki 'ss ka
 The rhinoceros grass sought, then the boy the figure threw
 tùrei, 'anihi bu ghadei, gèd bu tegei, gènyodi bu ku heðtei.
 away, the milk he took, a tree he went to, the mare he to it tied.

Ísago⁴ gèdka hurda, ya shanti ínan e gabdaha
 While he at the tree was sleeping, the five young men who the girls

¹ from bahh.

² reflexive verb from gal. Verbs in 1 usually change l to sh in forming these derivatives.

³ the first part that is milked, and not so rich as the second, or gudul.

⁴ Isaga o, § 218.

gùrsadei u yímaden, kolkasei yidahhden, "Sàlám aleikum." Hàbiyo married to him came, then they said, "Salam aleikum." Hàbiyo Butiya ku yidi, "Aleikum salám." Kolkasu yidi, "Haggad ku Butiya said, "Aleikum salam." Then he said, "Where do so'otan?" Wahhai yidahhden, "'Ano wiyiled bannu dònena." you go to?" They said, "Milk of rhinoceros we want." Kolkasu yidi, "'Ano wiyiled ana haya, mahha iga sisó- Then he said, "Milk of rhinoceros I have, what to me for it will you nesan?" Kolkasei yidahhden, "Wahhad dònensid." Kolkasu yidi, give?" Then they said, "What you wish." Then he said, "Hòlo dònì mayo, ninkinba¹ maga'aiga yan futada kaga "Goods I do not want, each of you my name I the buttock upon dijíneya." Kolkasei yidahhden, "Hauràrsan." Maga'isi yu futadi will print." Then they said, "All right." His name he the buttock kaga wada² dijiyei shanti nin ba. Kolkasa 'anihi hohhdaäha³ upon all printed the five men. Then the milk the first u siyei, gudulkina Hàbiyo Butiya ghatei⁴. he gave, and the second Hàbiyo Butiya took for himself.

Magàlodi Suldànkì jògei yei tegan o 'anihi gèyen. The town the Sultan dwelt in they went to, and the milk took. 'Anihi, shanta nin sídatei, ya Suldànkì indihisi logu shubei, The milk, the five men carried, the Sultan his eyes was upon poured, wahhba tari waiyen⁵. Daràr dambe ya Hàbiyo Butiya nothing to be of use it failed. A day following Hàbiyo Butiya 'anihisi nàgtisi u si díbei, wuhhu yidi, "Abahà iyo hoyodà his milk to his wife he gave, he said, "Your father and your mother yanei ku arkin, kolkad ku shúbesid." Kolkasei 'anihi let them not you see, when you in pour." Then she the milk geisei, kolkasei ku shubtei. Indihi Suldànkà iyo indihì hoyodèd took, then she in poured. The eyes of the Sultan and the eyes of her mother ya u⁶ dila'ei. Kolkasei ínanti so áratei, ákhalkèdì bei timi. opened. Then she the girl ran away, to her house she came.

¹ you men, cf. §§ 200 (iii) and 206.

² Note order of particles, § 236.

³ **ah** may be added to any noun used adjectivally or descriptively.

⁴ from **ghado** take to yourself.

⁵ plural agreeing with '**ano**, which is a plural noun.

⁶ i.e. by reason of it.

Kolkasa Suldànkì oghàdei in Hàbiyo Butiya indihì u dila'ei. Then the Sultan learned that Hàbiyo Butiya the eyes opened. Suldànkì ba u yèdei inámodi kàleh e gabdihìsi gùrsadei, The Sultan called the young men other who his daughters married, wuhhu yidi, "Ínanki Hàbiyo Butiya e gabaddaidi yereid gùrsadei he said, "The boy Hàbiyo Butiya who my girl young married yan u ðibei magàlodaida hukumkèda. Ídinkuna eidan u I have given my town its government. And ye servants to nòkhda." Hàbiyo Butiya dabadéd Suldàn nòkhdei. him be." Hàbiyo Butiya afterwards Sultan became.

II. INANKI MASKA DILEI.

Ínan iyo ínan wa walàlaäha. Lo' báí jiren, mel 'idlaäh bai hër ku ahayen. Ínankuna lo'du ra'í jirei, ínantuna ákhalka yei fadiyí jirtei, habènki bei heroda iss ugu imán jiren. Ínanti ba ghorohh bádatei, räg ba weidistei, ínanki ba u ðidei in la gùrsado ínanta. Màlin dambe ya niman ákhalki ínanti ugu yímaden. Kolkasei la hassàwen, ínanki e walàlaähayen ínanta, ya galábtì so hoidei. Kolkasu oghàdei in räg u yimi ínanti, o iss ka àmus. Màlinti dambe ya nimanki ínanti u so nòkhden, wahhai yidahhden, "An walálka dilne, gormu dagányahai?" Kolkasei ínanti tidi, "Kolku lo'di lisseyo." Habènki bei yímaden, kolku lo'da lisseyei, muski bei ka so bòden. Kolku arkei 'ollki, yu sèfti labahhai, kolkasa waláshi timaha ghóbotei, kolkasu timihì u goiyei, muski bu ka bòdei. Ôdi bai ghorihisi ka goisei. Kolkasu bahhsodei, wuhhu taga magàlo agtèd, wahha¹ ku hedna gèd ínan. Wuhhu yidi, "Na yàtahai?" Kolkasei tidi, "Suldànkì magàloda ya i ðalei." Wuhhu yidi, "Mahhád ugu² hedántahai mesha?" Wahhai tidi, "Mas ba lei hedei, maskas ba i imáneya o i 'uneya." Kolkasu yidi, "Gormu yimàda?" Kolkasei tidi, "Ásarka." "Kolku yimàdo muhhu samèineya masku?" Wahhai tidi, "Biyuhu³ 'abeya marka hore, dabadédto-na ángu⁴ i 'uneya." Kolkasu yidi, "Wàtahai." Kolki maski yimi yu biyihì ku da'ei, kolkas ínanki sèfti labahhai o mádaha kaga diftei, kolkasa maski dintei. Ínanti bu kahaistei, magàlodi bu gèyei. Dadki

¹ Note this use of **wahha**—There was tied to a tree, a girl.

² **mahhad u mesha ku hedántahai?**

³ **biyaha u.**

⁴ **ániga u.**

magàlodi jògei ya ku so árarei, isago ínanti wada. Wahha la yidi, "War, wá side?" Kolkasu yidi, "Maski ban dilei." Kolkasa Suldanka lo gèyei, o lei yidi, "Ninkasa maski dilei." Kolkasa Suldanka yidi, "Ínantaída gùrso." Halkasa ínanki ínanti ku gùrsadei.

III. ÍNANTI LUGAHÁLAEID.

Suldàn ba ínan laha, ínanta ghorànka lo ògí¹ jirei. Bérigi dambe ya Suldànkí hajki ghobtei, ínanti bu amáneyei nin wadàdah, o yidi, "Ínantas ghorànka u si ògí²." Wadádki ba ínanti iss ka dama'ei inu ka simeisto, ínanti ba didei. Daràrti dambe yei tidi, "Berri i kàli." Daràrti-ai mudeisten yei sallànki ákhalki ka ghadei, halki wadádki ka so fùlì jirei. Abahéd yu warkhad ú direi, wuhhu ku ghorei, "Ínantàdi dìlo' ei nokhotei." Suldànkí ba hajki ka yimi. Ínanti bu u adàdei, wuhhu u díbei niman adòmaäh, wuhhu yidi, "Ínantas ghorta ka so goiya." Adòmihi ya ínanti kahhayei, wahhai gèyen mel òrleh. Ínanti bei lugaha ka goiyen, kolkasei habashèdi ghoden. Intei habáshi ghodeyen, yei ka gurgúratei, mel òrleh yei gashei, o kaga òumatei. Adòmihi kolkei habáshi ghoden yei meshiei fadídei ka ègen³, wa ka waiyen, Kolkasei dèro dilen, ògi dèroda gharòrad ku shuben. Suldànkí bei u gèyen ògi, o yidàhnden "Ínanti dilnei." Málín dambe ya sáfar meshi so marei, meshi ínanti fadídei yu degei. Dúhurki kolkei sáfarku aurti rèrtei, yei ínanti o dírti fadída arken. Ínanti ya nin so ghadei, aur bu so sàrei. Magàlodi-ai yímaden yu kenei. Ínanti ya ninki so ghadei akhal fadisiyei. Beri dambe ya ínan Suldàn òlei ya ínanti weijigèdi arkei, weijigèdi o wanáksan⁴ ya ínanki arkei. Ninki-ai akhalkísa fadidei yu ku yidi, "An ínanta ka gùrsado." Ninki ba yidi, "Ínanta wa lugoládahai." Kolkasa ínanki Suldànkaü yidi, "Ana gùrsáneya, i si." Kolkasu yidi, "Hauràrsan." Ínanti ba ínanki Suldànká gùrsadei. Laba ínan yei u òashei. Íyadu òrleh ya ínanki yidi, "Hajki ban ghobóneya." Ínanki ba ínanti uga tegei

¹ teach.

² continue to teach.

³ **ka ègen**. Note the use of **ka** in these expressions, meaning, to look for in a place, or being unable to find in a place.

⁴ The Possessive adjective suffix **-gèdi** is treated as an epithet, and therefore the particle **o** is required for the second adjective **wanáksan**.

wan¹, o hajki ghobtei. Isago hajki kú maghan, ya nagtisi dadabtei, wahhai riyotei iyadu labada lugod laba shimbirod kaga jògta, o lugihi u behhen, o hajki ghóbotei. Arorti kolki wàgu beriyei, ya wahhai árakta labadi shimbirod o labadi lugod kaga jòga, o lugihi u behhen. Arorti kolkei ahaid, yei labadèdi ínan iyo wanki iyo labadi shimbirod kahhaisatei, hajki bei ghóbotei. Dàr dauga dehhdèda yei taktai, wahha ugu yimi abahèd iyo walalkèd iyo wadádki iyo ninkèdi intas o midna an u gáranin. Inamodèdi yei u shekeisei, dawodi iyada heshei yei ugu shekeisei, abahèd ba makhlei iyo wadádki, kolkasa wadádki dama'ei inu áraro, kolkasa Suldànkí yidi, "Fàdi inta shékado damáneso." Suldànkí, ínanta abahèd, ya wadádki ghorti ka goiyei, ínanti iyo abahèd iyo ninkèdi inti wa leiss wada ra'ei. Hajki ba la tegei. Ínanti iyo abahèd halki yei iss ku girten.

IV. HÒGGI DÀRTA.

Suldàn ba ínan laha, ínanki ba yidi, "Wa gùrsáneya." Suldànkí ba hòla badan siyei, markabna wa siyei. Ínanki Suldànká ya dòfei magàloü tegei. Magàlodi kolku tegei, yu nin Suldàn la sahhèbei Suldànkí ba dàr siyei, dàrti u kú jirei ínanku iyo dàrti Suldànká ya iss u dalòliyei. Nàgti Suldànkú² la sahhèbei. Màlinti dambe yu nàgti Suldànká ínanki ku yidi, "Sorti ninkàga adu saméin jirta o kàleh i samei." Suldànkí ba ínanki u tegei, wuhhu yidi, "Àwa anad wahh i la 'unese." Suldànkí wuhhu yidi, "Hauràrsan." Ínanki ba nàgti Suldànká ku yidi, "Àwa kolka anigu iyo Suldànkú annu sorta 'uneno, wahhan dònèya inad sorta na sìsid." Nàgti ba tidi, "Suldànkí ya i garanéya." Kolkasu yidi, "Ku garan mayo, ana ku oðan wa nàgtaidi." Nàgti ba tidi, "Hadu i garan waiyo, adiga yan ku ra'i dònà, o nàg ku nokhon." Habènki ba Suldànkí ákhalki yimi, darkisi bu ghàtei, ínanka ákhalkisi bu yimi. Nàgti ba hòggi ákhalka ka so dustei³, ínanka ákhalkisi bei timi. Kolkasei Suldànkí iyo ínanki sorti sisei. Suldànkí ba garteí nàgtisi, kùrsigi bu ka ka'ei, ákhalkisi bu u ka'ei. Intanu ákhalki gàdin yei nàgti hòggi ka dustei, gogoshèdi yei ku fadisatei, Suldànkí ba arkei. Kolku arkei yu haddana ákhalki ínanka ku so nõkhdei, hòggi bei ka

¹ lit. went from a ram for her, i.e. left a ram for her.

² Suldànká u.

³ come through.

so dustei nàgti, nàgti bu haððana arkei. Ínanki, u 'úntoda la 'uneyei, ya Suldànkì ku yidi, "Ma nàgtatan sorta inna sinesa miad nàgtàdi modei?" Ínanki ba yidi, "Nàgtu wa nàgtaidi." Suldànkì ba 'ss ka faðistei. Aròryodi dambe ya ínanki Suldànkà ku yidi, "Wa dòfeya." "Hauràrsan," bu yidi. Nàgti Suldànkà ya ínanki la ballàmei, o yidi, "Arorta halkas ka so dus, wa dòfeya." Nàgti ba halki ka so dustei, ínanki yei u timi, markabki bu geyei, wa la dòfei, ínanki ba nàgti Suldànkà gúrsadei, kolku la bàhsodei.

V. MAGÀLODI HÒLAHA DADKA KU 'UNA.

Wahh lei yidi, nin ba fàras fùlei, wuhhu' yimi habàr, wahhai tidi, "Haggad ku so'ota?" Wuhu yidi, "Magàloda an ku so'oda." Wahhai tidi, "Magàloda dadka lagu² ghasha, yan lagu ghalonine, ha gelin." Wuhhu yidi, "Kulli wa géleya." Wahhai tidi, "Magàloda nin Suldànah bei lehðahai, ninka Suldànkà ínan bu lehyahai, ínanta bokhorkèda wa mas, masku dadka 'una. Aurna isagu dadka 'una, ákhalka hortisa yu faðista, halko golgol ku faðista." Wahhai tidi, "War, nino, hadad magàloda tégesa³, ínanta Suldànkà ðalei akhalkèda órod o gal." Wuhhu yidi, "Ninki bei yidi⁴, Eiga dadka 'una, iyo aurka dadka 'una, iyo maska dadka 'una, haggan ka ðafi dòna?" Íyadi bá tidi, "Gèdaha ghado o⁵, aurki yu ku 'unine, kolkad ðafiso ákhalkiad ku so'oto, gèdaha afka u geli, yu ku 'unine. Eìgana 'adka ghado o, eìga agtisi ðig o, ha 'uno, yu adiga 'unine. Máskana wa kan ínanta dehhdèda ku dùban, ghoriga ghado o, maska madahisi sar, dabadéd maska u ðiman dòna. Kolkad sida yesho dabadéd ákhalka gal o ínanta u tag, dabadéd ínanta gúrso." Kolkasu isagu ínanta gúrsadei.

¹ wuhhu here represents wahha u, in which u is the particle =to. It means literally therefore, There came to (him) an old woman.

² la ku. ku in, and refers to the town. ghalonine. The usual form is ghalon for the negative Imperative. This must be some Continuative form, but I have not met it elsewhere.

³ Indicative mood, i.e. If you are (as you say) going.

⁴ bei = ba 1. Who is the man referred to is not clear. There must be some omission in the rendering of the story.

⁵ The conjunction o is frequently used like this with the first coordinate sentence, instead of introducing the second.

VI. NASIB.

Wahh lei yidi, nin ba òàn rèrei, òànki bu kahhayei, 'elki bu geyei, wa ka so òànshei'. Kolku so òànshei yu aurti 'ss ku so hedishei. Kolkiu dehhdì jògei ya lehh aur ka hadei, lehhdì kàleh so kahhayei. Kolku mel fòg jògei yu lehhdì ka hadei wai. Kolkasu dib u so órdei. Lehhdì aur o² lehh libahh 'unesa ayu gu yimi, kolkasu iss kaga yimi. Lehhdì aur ó kàleh o² lehh libahh ó kàleh 'unesa ugu yimi. Kolkasu sibràr bu ka ghatei aurti, gurigòdi yu yimi, rerkòdi o² la da'ei bu arkei, o 'oll da'ei.

VII. NÀGTI WANAKSANEID.

Nin ba ínan laha. Ínanki ba yidi, abihi ku yidi, "Abo, wahhan òòneya, nàg an gùrsada." Kolkasu yidi, "Wahhad so kahhaisata nàg armáli." Kolkasa armálidi so kahhaistei, kolkasu yidi, "Gùrso." Kolkasu gùrsadei. Kolkasu yidi, "Hadiḡ ku heḡ, kolkei ku la hádasho hadiga ka fur." Kolkasu hadiga ku heḡ. Nàgti ba tidi, "Wahhan³ maan arkí jirin, mahhád nogu⁴ sameinesa?" Kolkasu hadigi ka furei. Arorti yu abihi bu yimi, kolkasu yidi, "Mahhai ku tidi?" Kolkasu yidi, "Wahhai i tidi, 'Wahhan maan arkí jirin, wahhas mahhad nogu sameinesa?' " Kolkasu yidi, "'ss ka 'eri." Tasu wa mid.

Ínanki ya abihi bu yidi, "Nàg kàleh so kahhaiso, ínan wein so kahhaiso." Kolkasu yidi, "Awa hadig ku heḡ. Kolkei ku la hádasho ka fur." Kolkasu heḡ, kolkasei tidi, "Wahhan maan u makhlí jirin, mahhád wahha nogu hédesa?" Kolkasu ka furei. Arorti abihi u yimi, kolkasu yidi, "Wahhai tidi, 'Wahhan maan makhlí jirin, mahhád hadiga nogu sameinesa?' " Kolkasu yidi, "Tanna 'ss ka 'eri." Tasna wa mid.

Kolkasu yidi, "Wahhad so kahhaisata ínan yer o wanáksan." Kolkasu so kahhaistei. Kolkasu yidi, "Awa hadig ku heḡ, kolkei ku la hádasho hadiga ka fur." Kolkasa ínanki 'ss ka sehhoḡei, habènki ó òàn yu 'ss ka hurdei. Kolki arorti ahaid ínanti yei ínanki ke'isei, kolkasei tidi, "Hadiḡ-ad igu heḡtei wa iga da'ei, o igu ma heḡna, hadiga igu heḡ." Arortina abihi yu u shègei, "Abo, wahhai tidi, 'Hadiga iga da'ei, o igu ma heḡna, hadiga igu heḡ.'" Kolkasu yidi abihi ba yidi, "Tas haíso, tasa ba wanáksan." Ti dabadéd yu 'ss ka gùrsadei.

¹ from òànsò, cf. § 104.

² Adjectival sentences with o, cf. § 261.

³ This thing.

⁴ na u ku.

VIII. DADKU IYO WARÀBUHU.

Wahha lei yidi, Waràbuhu hòlahá laha, Dadku wahhba má lahain. Bérigi dambe ya Dadku hòlaha Waràbaha u ilàliyei, Waràbahana wa shirei. Bérigi dambe aya Dadku tashàdei, wuhhu yidi, "An Warabaha hòlaha ka ghadno, íyaga o shirki Waràbihi ku maghányahai." Ya Dadki hòlihi òdei. Habènki u yimi, kolki-u yimi ya laga 'eriyei. Waràbihi ya ghailo tegei, bahalihi kàleh ugu tegei, wuhhu yidi, "War, lei da'ei." Kolkasei yidahhen, "An dùlno." Mel bei so maren, balli biyo kú jiran yei yímaden. Sakàro lab aya yidi "Balli hadeidinan i dein, ka 'abi maysán." "War, wa ka 'abena, naga tag," yei yidahhen. Biyihi yu 'idi ku shubei, kolkas biyihi idlàden, kolkas haràd u bakhtiyei, kolkei biyo waiyen.

IX. HASHU IYO HÒLAHEDA.

Wahha lei yidi, Hal wahh wada laha, mas iyo hhas, iyo dab, iyo dàd, iyo libahh, iyo ghaiyàno, iyo àmin, wa todòbodas ya hashi ka dahhaisei. 'Ashodi dambe ya ghaiyànodi tidi, "Libahha hasho wein inna ka ghadne, an libahha dillo." Kui kàleh ya yidi, "Side u dilla?" Kolkasei tidi, "Maska libahha ha ghànino. Kolkad ghàninto, hhaska gal." Kolkasa yo¹ ghàninei, kolkasu hhaski galei. Kolkasei tidi, "Dabka O, hhaski iyo maska gub lábada ba." Kolkas hhaski iyo maski dabki ya gubei. Kolkasei tidi, "Dabku iya maska iyo hhaska bakhtiyei, dàdkuna dabka ha bakhtiyo." Kolkasei àmintà tidi, "Dàdku bùrta ma maro, dehhdà un bu marà, an innagu hashà bùrta la marro." Kolkasei bùrti la maren. Kolkasei tidi ghaiyànodi, "An hashà ghalono." Kolkasei ghashen, kolkasei 'adka bisleisaten, 'adki bei lukhoten. 'Adki mahai wahh kàleh ka ma 'unin, 'adki ya ku mergadei, 'ad wein bu aha, afkina u mari wai. Kolkasei bakhtiyei.

X. NINKI INDAHALAÄ.

Meshà räg badan ya wada hädleyei. Laba nin, midna wa indálayahai midna ma indalaä. Ninki indahálaha² aya yidi, "Mahhad nin indála kala hädlesan? Wahhba arki mayo." Ki indahálaä³ ba yidi, "Ya nin indála u⁴ taghànin?" Inti kàlehto ya

¹ ya u.

² Note inflexion of adjective. nin indáleh a man with eyes, but ninki indahálaha the man with eyes.

³ nin indala, ninki indahalaä.

⁴ By what do you know a blind man?

tidi, "Wahhannu ninki indahalaä u naghán, ninki an wahhba arkenin." Markasu ki indahalaä yidi, "Wahha indála, ninki an oghòn lahai, ya indala."

XI.

The following is an example of the pure narrative style, being an account of Col. Swayne's expeditions against the Mullah, from the raising of the levy in November 1900 to the battle of Erigo in October 1902. It was taken down by me from the mouth of a Somali native officer with the force, Nur Jama, Habr Awal.

Note the use of *iyanna*, *iyu*, etc. for the pronouns *yannu*, *yu*, etc. The Present tense is freely used for the Past.

The raising of the Levies.

Kolkas "Swayne" ba imáneya, askàrr badan bu ghoríneya (enlist). Kolkas "Swayne" so bahhai, Harrar bu nogu yimid. Kolkasu yidi, "Askàrr ban dòneya." Markas Oskar Garad, "Imisad dònese?" bu yidi. Markasu yidi, "Boghol fardòleh ban dòneya." Markasu yidi, "Bogholki lagu sìneya." Bogholki aya la siyei. Kolki la siyei, iyannu so so'ona. Adadleh iyannu nimid. Sidèd kumbani (company) iyannu nokhonei. Kolkas iyannu ayarsina (drill), bil keliah iyannu fadínei. Kolkasu 'olki "Swayne" no yimi, Burao-na ka so so'onei, Bèr bannu tagnei.

"Col. Swayne" iyo "Col. Phillips" lábadas u sarrèyen (were in command). Wadádku wuhhu yal Olesan. Kolkas iyannu nimid Uduwein. Ilàlo la direi, wadádki, so ego' la yidi. Dabaded wahha lei yidi, wadádki bahhsei². Uduwein iyannu ka gùrrei (started). Dabaded wahhannu tagnei Olesan. Wadádki wuhhu jirei Nogàl. Olesan bannu ka gùrrei, dabadédto Wadámagô ilàlo iyannu ka dirrei. Ilàlodi iyei rero so áaktei, hal iyo aur iyei so heshei. Fáraski iyo Rakùbki iyannu ka dùlinei (sent to attack), dabadéd 'olki kolku dùlei iyannu ka daba gùrrei. Kolkas laba daràrod iyannu so'onei, kolkas Haridig (Sanala) bannu degnei. Rakùbki iyo Fáraski sidèd kun o gèlah³ iyei kenei. Kolkas "Swayne" iyu yidi; "Laba kumbani iyei halkan fadiyesa, gèlina halkas iyei laga ka tegi" (will be left). Kolkas kumbanayága u so haðei, iyo gèli. Kolkasa 'olki "Swayne" u tegei.

¹ in la so ego.

² cf. § 104, note.

³ After *sidèd kun o*, *gèl* is made adjectival by the termination *ah*.

MacNeill's zariba (Sanala).

"Capt. MacNeill" iyo "Murray" iyei héroda laga ka tegei. Kolkas ilàlodi wadádka iyannu áragnei. Málinti lábada sa'adod (2 o'clock) 'ollkisu no yimid. Kolkannu 'ollki áragnei, iya sirkálku, "Zaribada so gala," bu yidi, dabadédna iyannu wérerrei (fought), kolkas iyannu iss leinei (slew each other), dabadédna áfar sa'adod (for 4 hours) iyannu dagàlla (fought). Lehhdi sa'adod (6 o'clock) iyannu ka 'érinei (chased) kolka dabadéd zaribada gudahi iyannu iss ku fadisona. Kolkasu dabadédto todòbadi sa'adod habènki iyannu wérerrei, lába sa'adod bannu dagàlla, kolkasa sagalki sa'adod iyannu 'érinei. Haddana kòdi bei so nokhden, haddana sa'ad keliah iyannu dagàlla. Kolkas iyága iyannu leina, dabadédna wa áraren (they ran away). Kolkas wàga iyo beri (in the early morning) todòbadi sa'adod iyei so nokhden, kolkasannu iss leina, kolkasannu derewishti iyannu wada leina.

Intanei so dówànin (Before they came close) gidligànkí (the Maxim gun) iyu leí. Kolkei so dówàden askàrtti banadúkhdi iyei ku dishei. (Gidligànkí wa wanàksányahai, wa bahal, wa shaitan). Kolki nimanki fogèyen iya gidligànkí lagu si dayei, kolkas rāg badan ka lai (died), kolkas dabadéd haggi zaribada iyei ku so ya'ei (fled). Áfar nin o askàri wadád¹ wàranki iyu ku dilei. Kolkas iyannu 'érinei, afárton nin iyannu ghóbonei.

"Capt. MacNeill" iyu ániga u yèdei, wuhhu yidi, "Inti wadádka laga dilei so tiri." Wahhan kahhaistei tòban askàri, wahhannu ka dignei áfar bóghol iyo lehhdon inti dímatei. Annaga lábadi kumbani sagàl nin iyei ka dilen. Kolkas "MacNeill" ba yidi, wuhhu yidi, "Rāgi derewishki dinte mel iss u gei." Kolkas iyannu mel keliah so kennei. Kolkasa 'ollki "Swayne" iyu no yimid, wadádki wahhba ísagu ka ma helin.

Ferdiddin.

'Ollki o ðan iyu Bòhotle iss ugu yimid. Dabadédna ilálo iyannu ka dirrei. Kùrmis iyei gèl badan ku so árakei. Ilàlodi ba so nokhotei, gèl badan iyannu áragnei, 'ollki o ðan iya gùrei, dabadédna Kùrmis iyannu tagnei. Allegheri gèl badan laga so ghadei. Shan iyo tòban 'asho iyannu fadínei. Dadki hòlahálaha ba no yimid. Dadki iyu "Colonel"-ki u yímaden. Wuhhu yidahhei, "Edinkannu idin ra'ena, adigi iya lo 'elin" (will be recovered). Kolkasu yidi, "Hadeidin ra'esán adigi iyan idin ku 'elíneya. Rèraha o ðan so rèra o agtèda kena." Kolkasi Allegheri na ra'ei. Kolkasu yidi,

¹ wadád here used for a Mullah's man.

"Wadádki bannu idin la dònena." Dabadéd iyannu gùrrei. Bòhotle iyannu nimid. Rági buka o askàrrtaäha iya Bòhotle lagu rèbei (were left behind), dabadédna Bòhotle iyannu ka gùrrei. Wahhannu degnei Wudwud, dabadéd ilàlo Wudwud iyannu ka dirrei. Wahhai yidahhen, "Wadádku wa fògyahai." Kolkasannu ka gùrrei, shan habèn iyo shan daràrod so so'onei. Daràrti dambe iyannu 'ollki wadádka iss hellei (met). Dabadéd iyannu dirirrei. Wahhai kaga dilen shan iyo tòban askàri iyo sirkálki af-Arabad (i.e. Capt. Friedrichs). "Dickinson" sahib rasàs ba ku da'dei, bòdodi kaga da'dei. Shan iyo labàton askàri iyei rasàsti ku da'dei, an òmanin (without being killed). Kolkas iyannu biyo wehna (could not find) o so nokhonei. Wahhannu ka so baghane, askàrtti hadane, biyo haison, wa bakhtiyesa. Shan iyo tòban 'asho iyannu Berberah u so dahhnei. Kolkannu halkan nimid, askàrtti gèl badan la siyei, hawildàrki sadehh halod iya la siyei, ninki jemadàrkaäha áfar ba la siyei. Askàrtti fasahh, nin ba bil fasahh iyu helei.

"Force"-kan halkas iyu ku òmadei.

Las Idleh raids.

'Ollki labad iyu Burao wa so yimi. Burao-na dabadéd áfar bílod fadína, kolkas ilàlo laga direi. Ilàlodi Ali Naleyah iyei u taktei, wahhai tídi, "Hòlo badan iyannu so áragnei." Áfar kumbani iyo "Col. Cobbe" iyo "Col. Swayne" iyannu ku so'onei, wahhannu tagnei Las Idleh. Las Idlehna fàràs badan nogu yimid. Kolkas iyannu ilàlo dirrei. Ilàlodi iyei tídi, "Hòlo badan iyannu so áragnei." Kolkasannu Las Idleh ka gùrrei, kòbyo-tòban habèn u si so'onei. Jid Ali iyannu Ali Naleyah u tagnei, kolkasu kumbani waliba mel marei. "Col. Swayne" iyo kumbani badki iyannu mel kaga tagnei. Kolkas iyannu Ali Naleyah wérrerei, habènki iyo daràrti wa hòlihi ka da'nei. Kolkas hòlihi iyannu zaribadi i so kennei, wihhi-annu rág áragnei iyannu leinei. Kolkasannu ka so gùrrei. Wahhannu tagnei, Las Idleh shan iyo tòban habèn iyannu u so dahhnei. Kolkas askàrtti ba adi la siyei, ninki askàri aha lábyo-tòban adi la siyei, ninki hawildàrka iyo naikka labàton la siyei, jemadarkí iyo "color-havildar"-ki soddon ba la siyei. "Col. Cobbe" iyo "Col. Swayne" Berberah ku nokhden. "Maj. Petrie" iyo áfar kumbani Burao-annu so nokhonei, kolka bil fadínei Burao. Kolkasa "Col. Swayne" iya no yimid. Wuhhu yidi, "Force"-ku wa bahhàya, wadádka iyannu dònena. Reidka Somàlida gèl maawinah i kena," bu yidi. Kolkasi Habr Awal iyo Habr Yunis gholi walba

sidèd boghol o halod iya lo kena, Habr Toljåla lehh boghol o halod lo kena.

The Nogal Campaign.

Kolkas 'ollki iyu dakhàghei. Kumbanayága sidèd daràrod naga dambèyei. Kolkasu Rakùbki iyo Fàraski Berberah ka yímaden, o Burao nogu yímaden. Wahha u sarreyei "Capt. Osborne." Kolkas annu 'ollki ka daba tagnei. Shan daràrod dabadéd Bohotle iyannu ghobonei. Kolkannu Bohotle ghobonei, "Col. Swayne" iyo 'ollki iyannu u tagnei. Kolkasa ilàlo laga direi, ilàlodi iya tòban habèn iyei naga mághana. Ilàlodi wa so nokhotei, waghahi yidaghan, "Wadádki maannu árag." Kolkasa "Colonel"-ku ba yidi, "Wa dùlena." Nogál iyannu ku dùlle. Kolkas iyannu tagnei Gerowei. Hòlo badan iyannu Mohammed Garad ka ghadnei. Gerowei labàton habèn bannu fadínei. Ilàlo iya la direi. Ilàlodi wadádki iyei Mudug ugu taktei (went to Mudug for the Mullah). Ilàlodi ba no timid, ilàlodi ba tídi, "Wa omániaha, o biyo heli mayno." Kolkas iyannu Bari ghóbonei. Halin bannu ghóbonei. Naleyah Ahhmed hòlo badan iyannu ka so ghadnei. Kolkasa sirkálku yidi, "Wa nokhonena." Lábyo-tòban 'asho bannu so so'onei, kolkasannu Gaulo nimid, kolkas "Colonel"-ku yidi, "Laba nin o sirakil, iyo wáranlaha iyo hòlaha ha nokhdan." Kolkasa hòlihi iyo waranlihi iyo laba sirkal iyei nokhden. Sádehh kun o gèli iyu "Colonel"-ku so rèbei.

Erigo (Oct. 6, 1902).

Kolkas ilàlo la direi, waghahi taktei, wadádki iyei u taktei. Kolkasei tídi, "Wadádku Mudug bu fadíya." Kolkasannu ku gùrrei, kolkasu shan habèn bannu dahhnei, 'ashodi lehhad arorti Erigo derewishti iyannu iss ku hellei. Kolkasu mel bannu fadisona, kolkasa dabadédto derewishti iyei nagu so dakhàghdei. "Mile" kolki no só jirei, sirkálku yidi, "Inna la díriri mayan, aurtà rèra, inna dakhàghna." Kolkasannu ku dakhàghnei. Mesha wa mel aínah. Kolkas kumbani walba "extend" ba lo dakhàjiyei, sida-annu so'onei o kol keliah íyagu "fire" nogu ridei. Kolkasa bèrka iyannu dulka dígna, kolkas iyannu dirirrei. Áfar kumbani wa teg, iyei haggà ka bághatei, o árarei. Sadehh kumbani iyannu dagállei, inti káleh wa bághatei. Kumbanayága iyo lába káleh sádehhda kumbani ba dagálen.

Zaribadi iyannu so gallei, kolkas derewishti iyei timid. Sadehh kumbani iyei dibadda u bahhdei o 'éridei. Dabadéd Bohotle iyannu nimid.

TRANSLATIONS OF THE STORIES.

I-XI.

I. HABIYO BUTIYA (LAME HABIYO).

There once was a Sultan who had a son, whose mother was dead. But the Sultan married another wife, and went on a pilgrimage. Now a certain Jew was a friend of the Sultan's wife, but the Sultan's son and the Jew were enemies. The Jew said to the woman, "Let us kill the boy." So she mixed some poison in his food. But the boy had a mare, who knew everything, and the mare said to the boy, "Don't eat the food"; and when the food was put before him, the boy refused it. The next day the Jew came to the Sultan's wife and said, "When the Sultan comes back, say you are sick, and when he asks what will cure you, tell him the liver of the mare." The next day the Sultan came. Then she laid a skin on the bed and placed under it some fig leaves, and when she lay down the leaves crackled. Then the Sultan said, "What is the matter with you?" and she said, "I have a pain in my ribs." "What will cure you?" he said; and she answered, "The liver of your son's mare." The Sultan called the boy and said, "I intend to kill your mare for your stepmother." And the boy said, "Very well, but let me take a ride on her this evening." In the evening the boy rode the mare, and said to his father, "Good-bye, Father," and departed with the mare. He went to a town, and near the town he saw six girls washing at a well. The youngest of the girls saw him; and when she saw the man, she ran away from the well, being ashamed before the man. Then he singed the tail of the mare, who went up into the sky. The young man then pretended to be a cripple, and went into the town, and there became a servant.

Later the daughters of the Sultan said, "We wish to marry." The Sultan beat his drum, and announced, "My daughters wish to marry." Then the rich young men came together, and the girls were brought, and the people stood in the plain. Then the girls were asked, "Are the men you want all here?" And the young girl said, "The man I wanted is not here." The slave girls who were summoning the men were told to call all the men in the town, so they called the young cripple, Lame Habiyo. Then the Sultan asked the girls, "Are the men all here?" and they said, "Yes."

The girls were given six oranges, and they were told, "Let each girl hit the man she wants." The five other girls hit five rich young men, the young girl hit Lame Habiyo. Then her father and mother were so struck with horror, that they lost their sight; and the young man married the girl. On the next day they were told, "That which will cure the Sultan and his wife is rhinoceros' milk." And the young men who married the five girls were given five good horses, and Lame Habiyo was given a donkey, and they left the town. There came to Lame Habiyo the mare, whose tail he had burned, and he put on his gold dress and sword and mounted the mare. The mare flew up and reached the sky. Then he went to a place where rhinoceroses are born. A young rhinoceros he cut open, and opened out the skin and made a figure from it. In the afternoon the mother rhinoceros came, and Lame Habiyo pretended to be the young one. The first portion of milk he milked into one skin and the second portion he milked into another skin. Then the rhinoceros went to graze. Then the young man threw away the figure, and took the milk. He went to a tree and tied his mare to it. While he slept under the tree the five young men who married the other girls came to him, and said, "Salam Aleikum"; and Lame Habiyo said, "Aleikum Salam." Then he said, "Where are you going?" And they said, "We are looking for rhinoceros' milk." Then he said, "I have some rhinoceros' milk. What will you give for it?" And they said, "Whatever you wish." Then he said, "Wealth do I not want, but I will brand my name on the buttocks of each of you." Then they said, "Agreed." So he branded his name on the buttocks of all five. Then he gave them the first milk, and the second milk Lame Habiyo took for himself. They went to the town where the Sultan lived, and took the milk. The five young men carried the milk, and it was poured on the eyes of the Sultan, but was of no use. Another day Lame Habiyo gave his milk to his wife and said, "Let not your father and mother see you, when you pour it in." Then she took the milk and she poured it in. And the eyes of the Sultan and her mother were opened. Then the girl came running away and came to her house. Then the Sultan learned that Lame Habiyo had opened his eyes, and the Sultan called the other young men that married his daughters, and he said, "To the young man Lame Habiyo, who married my young daughter, have I given authority over my town, and you, be his servants." Afterwards Lame Habiyo became Sultan.

II. "THE DRAGON-KILLER."

(A variant of the story of Perseus and Andromeda.)

There were a brother and sister who kept a cow. They dwelt in a deserted place, and the brother used to go with the cow, while the sister used to sit in the house, and at night they met in the zariba. The sister was of great beauty, and men asked for her, but her brother refused to let the girl be married. One day some men came into the house for the girl,

and they conversed ; and the brother came in in the evening and found that men had come for his sister, but he said nothing. The next day the men returned to the girl and said, " We think of killing your brother ; when is he engaged ? " And the girl said, " When he is milking the cow." In the evening they came as he was milking the cow and leaped in over the fence. When he saw the enemy, he drew his sword. His sister seized his hair, but he cut it off, and jumped over the fence, which cut off his genitals ; and he escaped. He went near a town where there was a girl tied to a tree, and he said, " Who are you, girl ? " And she said, " My father is the Sultan of the town." And he said, " Why are you tied up here ? " And she said, " I am tied up for a dragon, which will come and eat me." Then he said, " When does it come ? " And she said, " In the evening." And he said, " When the dragon comes, what will it do ? " And she said, " First it will drink the water, and afterwards eat me." And he replied, " Very well." When the dragon came, it went down to the water, but the young man drew his sword and struck it on the head, and it died. Then he led away the girl, and brought her to the town, and the people of the town came running to him, as he led the girl, and they said, " What is this ? " And he said, " I have killed the dragon." Then he was brought to the Sultan, and they said, " This man has killed the dragon." And the Sultan bade him marry his daughter. So thereupon the man married her.

III. THE GIRL WITHOUT LEGS.

A Sultan had a daughter, and the daughter used to be taught the Koran. One day the Sultan went on a pilgrimage, and entrusted his daughter to a priest, and said, " Continue to teach that girl the Koran." The priest coveted the girl, wishing to lie with her, but the girl refused. One day she said, " Come to me to-morrow." On the day arranged she removed from the house the ladder by which the priest used to ascend. He then sent a letter to her father, and he wrote, " Your daughter has become a harlot." The Sultan returned from the pilgrimage, and he was angry with the girl, and he handed her over to some slaves, and he said, " Cut that girl's throat." Then the slaves took the girl, and they brought her to a wooded place, and they cut off her legs, while they dug her grave. While they were digging the grave she crawled away, and went into some trees and hid. When the slaves had dug the grave they looked in the place where she had lain and could not find her. Then they slew a gazelle, and the gazelle's blood they poured into a bottle, and brought the blood to the Sultan, and said, " We have slain the girl." One day later a caravan passed by the place, and camped where the girl lay. In the afternoon as the party were loading up the camels, they saw the girl sitting under a tree. A man took the girl, and put her on a camel, and brought her to the town they came to. The man who took the girl put her to live in a house. Later on the son of the Sultan saw the girl's face, and the young man saw that her face was

beautiful, and he said to the man whose house she dwelt in, "Let me marry that girl from you." And the man said, "The girl has no legs." Then the Sultan's son said, "I will marry her, give her to me." And so the man said, "Well and good." And the Sultan's son married her. She bore two children, and while she was with child the young man said, "I am going on a pilgrimage," and he left her a ram, and went on the pilgrimage. While he was away on the pilgrimage his wife had a dream, and she dreamed that two birds sat upon her two legs, and her legs had grown out, and that she made the pilgrimage. In the morning at break of day she saw the two birds sitting upon her two legs, and the legs had grown out. After daylight she took her two children and the ram and the two birds, and went on the pilgrimage. She came to a building at the half-way, and there came to her her father and her brother and the priest and her husband, none of whom knew her. She told stories to her children, and she related all that had happened to her, and her father heard, and the priest. Then the priest tried to run away, but the Sultan said, "Sit down until the story is finished." Then the Sultan, the girl's father, cut the priest's throat, and the girl with her father and husband went on and made the pilgrimage. And so the girl and her father were reconciled.

IV. THE HOLE IN THE WALL.

There was a Sultan who had a son, and his son said, "I want to marry." So the Sultan gave him many presents, and also a ship. The Sultan's son set sail and came to a town, and when he arrived at the town he became friendly with a Sultan, and the Sultan gave him a house. The young man made a hole between the house he was in and the Sultan's house, and he became friendly with the Sultan's wife. One day the young man said to the Sultan's wife, "Make some food for me just as you are accustomed to make it for your husband." And he went to the Sultan, and said, "To-night will you take food with me?" And the Sultan said, "Well and good." And the young man said to the Sultan's wife, "To-night when I and the Sultan are having our food, I want you to serve us with the food." And the woman said, "The Sultan will know me." Then he said, "He will not know you, I will say you are my wife." And she said, "If he does not know me, I will go with you and be your wife." At night the Sultan came home and dressed himself, and came to the young man's house. And his wife passed through the hole in the wall, and came to the young man's house. Then she served the food to the Sultan and the young man. The Sultan recognised his wife, and got off his chair, and went to his house. Before he reached his house, the woman passed through the hole and sat upon her bed, and the Sultan saw her. When he saw her he straightway came back to the house of the young man, while the woman came through the hole, and still

he saw her. The young man, who was dining with him, said to the Sultan, "Did you think this woman who is serving our food was your wife? The woman is my wife," he said, and the Sultan sat down. The next morning the young man said, "I am sailing." "Very good," he answered. And the young man arranged with the Sultan's wife and said, "In the morning come through that place, I am sailing." So the woman passed through and came to the young man, and he took her to the ship, and sailed. And the young man having run away with the Sultan's wife married her.

V. THE TOWN OF MAN-EATERS.

There is a story that a man was riding a horse, and there came to him an old woman, who said, "Where are you going?" And he said, "I am going to that town." And she said, "In that town people are slain and eaten; do not go in, lest they slay you." And he answered, "Still I am going in." Then she said, "The town has a Sultan, and the Sultan has a daughter, and the daughter's sash is a snake, and the snake eats the people. And there is a camel who eats the people, he sits in front of the house, over there upon a bed." And she said, "See, my man, if you are going to the house, run and enter the house of the Sultan's daughter." And he said, "The man told me, The dog eats the people, and the camel eats the people, and the snake eats the people. How am I going to pass them?" And the woman said, "Take this grass, and let not the camel eat you, but when you pass the house you are going to, put the grass in at the door, lest it eat you. And for the dog, take this piece of meat, and put it near the dog, and let him eat it and not you. And for the snake, which is tied round the girl's waist, take this stick, and place it on the snake's head, and then the snake will die. After you have done this enter the house and go to the girl, and then marry her." So he married the girl.

VI. MISFORTUNES.

There is a story that a man once loaded his water-camels and took them to the well, and went to draw water. When he went to draw water he tied his camels together. When he was in the nullah he left six camels behind while he led the other six. When he was some distance off, the six camels that were left behind were not to be seen. So he ran back, and came up to find six lions eating the six camels. Then he left them, and returned to the other six camels, and found six other lions eating these. Then he took a waterskin from the camels, and came to his home, to find his family looted by an enemy.

VII. HOW TO CHOOSE A WIFE.

A man had a son, and the son said to his father, "Father, I want to marry a wife." Then his father said, "Do you take a widow." So he took a widow, and his father said, "Marry her." So he married her. Then his father said, "Tie her with a rope, and when she speaks to you, untie the rope." So he tied her with a rope, and the woman said, "This is not what I have been accustomed to see. What are you doing with me?" Thereupon he untied the rope. In the morning his father came and said, "What did she say?" And he answered, "She said to me, This is not what I have been accustomed to see. Why are you doing that to me?" Then his father said, "Send her away." That was one.

The father said to his son, "Take another wife, take a grown girl." Then he said, "To-night tie her with a rope, and when she speaks to you, untie it." So he tied her, and she said, "This is not what I have been accustomed to hear, why are you tying me with that?" So he untied her. In the morning he came to his father, and he said, "She said, This is not what I have been accustomed to hear, what are you doing to me with the rope?" Then his father said, "Send her away too." And that was another.

Then his father said, "Do you go and take a nice, young girl." So he took one, and he said, "To-night tie her with a rope, and when she speaks to you untie it." So the young man did so, and went to sleep, and was asleep all night. In the early morning the girl woke him up, and said, "The rope with which you tied me is fallen off and is not tied to me, tie it upon me." And in the morning he told his father, "Father, she said, The rope has fallen off, and is not tied to me, tie it upon me." Then his father said, "Keep that one, she is the right one." So she was the one he afterwards married.

VIII. MAN AND HYAENA.

It is said that the Hyaena owned flocks and Man had none. One day Man was looking after the Hyaena's flocks, and the Hyaena went to the Council. After this Man thought, and he said, "Let us steal the Hyaena's flocks, while he is away at the council." So Man put the flocks in a zariba, and night came, and when it was night, they were driven off. The Hyaena howled, and went to the other animals, and he said, "See, I have been looted." Then they said, "Let us attack." They came along, and arrived at a pool of water, and the male Dikdik said, "If you do not let me come to the pool, you shall not drink." "Sir, we will drink, leave us," they said. Then he scratched sand into it, until the water was gone, and they died of thirst, when they found no water.

IX. CAMEL AND HER FOLLOWERS.

It is said that a Camel possessed altogether a Snake, a Zariba, a Fire, a Flood, and a Lion, and Deceit, and Honesty. Those seven the Camel owned. One day Deceit said, "We might steal the Lion from that big Camel, let us kill the Lion." The others said, "How are we to kill him?" Then she said, "Let the Snake bite the Lion, and when you have bitten him, go into the Zariba." So he bit him and went into the Zariba. Then she said, "O Fire, burn up both the Zariba and Snake." So the Fire burned both Zariba and Snake. Then she said, "The Fire has killed the Snake and the Fence, let the Flood too put out the Fire." After this Honesty said, "The Flood does not travel on the mountain, but only in the nullah, let us travel on the mountain with the Camel." So they travelled on the mountain, and then Deceit said, "Let us slay the Camel." So they slew her, and cooked the steak, and gulped down the steak, and except the steak nothing else of the Camel did they eat. And the meat stuck in their throats, for it was a big piece, and could not pass through their mouths. So they died.

X. THE BLIND MAN.

In a certain place many men were talking, and there were two men, one of whom was blind and the other was not blind. The man with sight said, "Why do you talk with a blind man? He can see nothing." And the blind man said, "How do you know a blind man?" The other one said, "We know a blind man, he is a man who sees nothing." Then the blind man said, "He that is blind is the man who knows nothing, he is blind."

XI.

Then Swayne came and began to enlist many askaris. Then Swayne left and came to us at Harrar. Then he said, "I want askaris." Then Oscar Gerard said, "How many do you want?" Then he said, "I want a hundred horsemen." Then he said, "The hundred shall be given you." The hundred were given. When they were given we marched and came to Adadleh. We made eight companies. Then we drilled, and we stayed for one month only. Then Swayne's force came to us, and we left Burao and went to Ber.

Col. Swayne and Col. Phillips were in command. The Mullah lived at Olesan. Then we came to Uduwein. An illalo was sent and told to look for the Mullah. Afterwards it was said to me, the Mullah had fled. We left Uduwein. Afterwards we went to Olesan. The Mullah was in the Nogal. We left Olesan, and afterwards at Wadamago we sent out illalos.

The illalos found some *karias*, and captured camels, female and male. We sent the horsemen and camel corps to attack. Afterwards when the force attacked we loaded up and followed. Then we marched for two days, and then halted at Haridig. The Camel Corps and horsemen brought in 8000 camels. Then Swayne said, "Two companies will stay here, and the camels will be left there." Then my company was left with the camels. Then Swayne's force went.

Capt. MacNeill and Murray were left at the zariba. Then we saw the Mullah's illalos. At 2 o'clock in the day his force came to us. When we saw the enemy the Sirkal said, "Come inside the zariba," and afterwards we attacked and then we slew each other and fought for four hours afterwards. At 6 o'clock we chased them away. After that we sat down together inside the zariba. Then later on, at 7 o'clock at night, we attacked and fought for two hours, and at 9 o'clock drove them away. Now at 1 o'clock they returned and this time we fought for one hour only. Then we slew those men, and afterwards they ran away. Then the next day at 7 o'clock they came back, and then we fired at each other, and then during the day we shot all the dervishes.

Until they came close the maxim shot them, when they came close the askaris shot them with their rifles. (The maxim is a fine thing, a wild beast or devil.)

When the people went further off and the maxim was let off at them, then many people perished. After that they fled up to the zariba. A Mullah man killed four askaris with his spear. Then we chased them and caught 40 men.

Capt. MacNeill sent for me and said, "Count for me all the Mullah men that are hit." I collected 10 askaris, and we counted 460 dead. Of our two companies they killed 9 men. Then MacNeill said, "Put the dervish dead men together somewhere." Then we brought them to one place. Then Swayne's force came to us, it had got nothing from the Mullah.

The whole force came together to Bohotle. And afterwards we sent out illalos, and they found many camels at Kurmis. The illalos came back and we saw many camels; the whole force loaded up, and we went to Kurmis. The Allegheri were looted of many camels. We stayed fifteen days. The owners of the animals came to us. The people went to the Colonel and said, "We will follow you, and the sheep will be brought back." Then he said, "If you follow I will get you back your sheep, load up all your *karias* and bring them close in." Then the Allegheri followed us. Then they said, "We will look for the Mullah with you. Afterwards we loaded up and came to Bohotle. The askaris who were sick were left behind at Bohotle, and then we left Bohotle. We halted at Wudwud and afterwards sent out illalos from Wudwud. They said, "The Mullah is far off." Then we started and marched for five nights and five days. On the next day we met the Mullah's force. Then we fought, 15 askaris were killed, and the Sirkal who talks Arabic. Dickinson sahib was struck with a bullet, he was struck in the thigh. Twenty-five askaris were struck with bullets, but not

killed. Then we found no water and came back. We were afraid, if the askaris have no water they will die. We spent fifteen days marching to Berbera. When we came here the askaris were given many camels. Every havildar was given 3, every jemadar 4, milk camels. The askaris received a month's leave.

There was the end of this force.

The second force came to Burao, and we stayed at Burao for four months afterwards. Then illalos were sent out and they went to the Ali Naleyah. They said, "We have found many animals." We marched there, four companies under Col. Cobbe and Col. Swayne. We went to Las Idleh, and at Las Idleh many horses came to us. Then we sent illalos, and the illalos said, "We have seen many animals." Then we left Las Idleh and marched on for eleven nights. We went to Jid Ali, to the Ali Naleyah. Then each company went its own way. We left Col. Swayne and half a company. Then we attacked the Ali Naleyah, and during the night and day looted the flocks. Then we brought the animals into the zariba. Any men we saw we slew. Then we left. We reached Las Idleh in fifteen nights. Then the askaris were given sheep, each askari was given 12, a havildar or naik 20, jemadar or colour-havildar 30. Col. Cobbe and Col. Swayne went back to Berbera. Maj. Petrie and our four companies came back to Burao. Then we halted for a month at Burao. Then Col. Swayne joined us. He said, "The Force will go out; we will look for the Mullah. Let the Somali people bring camels to help," he said. Then the Habr Awal and Habr Yunis each brought with them 800 head of cattle, the Habr Toljala 600. Then the force moved. My company remained behind for eight days. Then the Camel Corps and horsemen came from Berbera to Burao under the command of Capt. Osborne. Then we followed after the force. In five days we reached Bohotle. Then we joined Col. Swayne and the force at Bohotle. Then illalos were sent out. The illalos were away for ten nights. The illalos came back, and they said, "We have not seen the Mullah." Then the Colonel said, "We will advance." We advanced into the Nogal. Then we went to Gerowei. We looted many animals from the Mohd. Gerad. We stayed at Gerowei twenty nights. Illalos were sent out, they went to the Mullah at Mudug. The illalos came back to us and said, "It is a dry place, and we shall get no water." Then we made east and reached Halin. We looted many animals from the Naleyah Ahmed. Then the Sirkal said, "We will go back." For twelve days we marched and then came to Gaulo. Then the Colonel said, "Let two officers with the spearmen and animals go back." Then the animals and spearmen and two British officers went back. The Colonel left 3000 camels behind. Then illalos were sent. They went to the Mullah, and then said, "The Mullah is staying at Mudug." Then we loaded up and marched for five nights. On the sixth day in the early morning we met the dervishes at Erigo. Then we halted somewhere. After that the dervishes made a move towards us. When there was a mile between us, the Colonel said, "They will not fight with us, load up the camels and move." Then we

moved. The country was thick with trees. Then every company was extended; thus we moved, and all at once they sent a volley into us. Then we lay our bellies on the ground, and we fought. Four companies departed. They were frightened and ran away. We three companies fought, the rest ran away. The three companies that fought were mine and two others. We came into the zariba, then the dervishes came. Three companies went out and drove them away.

Afterwards we came to Bohotle.

SONGS.

In the songs a distinctly poetical style is noticeable, also a number of words, not found in colloquial Somali, many of which are absolutely unintelligible by themselves to an unpoetical native. Many of these words are coined by the author, but many are probably old words handed down from generation to generation. It is necessary therefore in many passages for the author himself, or a fellow poet (of whom there are many, both professional and amateur), to explain the real meaning. Several of those which I collected I have not published here, as I could get no satisfactory rendering or explanation even from interpreters.

Those translations which I have given are necessarily free in many places and by no means literal. They are interesting as examples of style, rather than of grammar.

Songs are divided into three classes, known as

Gerar, Gabei, and Hes¹.

The **Gerar** is sung on horseback, and usually relates to raiding and fighting.

The **Gabei** is a chant of a more peaceful nature, and is often a love song. It is usually sung round the fire in the evening.

The **Hes** is the Dancing-song, and always accompanies a dance. It is often in parts for men and women, and is usually of an amorous nature.

¹ Paulitschke (II. Cap. 2) describes six kinds of songs, and gives numerous examples.

All three seem to have a somewhat similar rhythm, which runs as follows :

Hálnă wă | igă sǎ|lăn,
 Hálnă wă | igă sǎ|'abghād,
 Hálnă wă | igă sǔ|āl.
 Hăl wă | ī sǎ'ab|ghād,
 wă | ī sǔl|dānkă ā|māntī,
 sīrād|kī Běrběr|ād,
 ȳō | wă hăl|dā sūbāhh | jōgă,

The length of the whole line may vary considerably. An essential point is the alliteration of one letter throughout the song, each line of which must contain a word which contains that letter. Thus one song may have g, another d, and so on ; in a "g" song this letter occurs in some word in every line. The songs usually consist of solo and chorus, often sung in parts. Besides these, there are certain well-known chants which are sung while watering or grazing animals, marching, loading or unloading. Many of these are very old indeed. The watering chants vary for the different animals ; camels, horses, and sheep have each their special chants sung to them, which again vary in different tribes, and are adapted to the nature of the well in order to suit the action of drawing the water.

I. GERAR, in s.

Greeting to Sultan Nur on his visit to the Habr Toljala.
 ? 1885.

Somali.

Halna¹ wa iga² salan³,
 Halna wa iga sa'abghad,
 Halna wa iga suāl.

Hal wa i sa'abghád,
 wa i Suldánka amànti,
 siradki Berberád,
 iyo wá haldá subahh jòga,

English.

First we salute thee,
 then we shake thy hands,
 then we ask a question.

First is our handshake,
 is praise to our Sultan,
 the light of Berberah,
 who is as an ostrich standing in the
 morning,

¹ A poetical word meaning "one thing," "item," similar to *kodī* in prose.

² from me. The sing. pronoun is used for the plural.

³ salaam.

bàlashi kala saide¹,
wàh la sisto la wáh².

Halna wa ìga salàn.
Gèla, Sènyo³ iyo Làn³,
sangayásha gharéistei,
gabdaha súrta la mòda⁴,

iyo seyahháinu ku jìfna.
Sàdadà nabad bá leh.

Halna wa ìga sual.
Suldànkì bokhronàdo,
hor mahhau so'otén,
sèdka ainu 'únenò⁵?
Ràbi ya inna sìyei,
sadehhdèni Ishhàk⁶,
hadanán ku salùghin,
ádiga O Suldàno,
sàlo yanna ka yèdìn⁷.

shaking out his wings,
beyond compare.

Again we salute thee.
The camels, Senyo and Lan,
(and) the stallions have become fat,
the young girls are like straight
sticks,
and we lie in the dew.
The tribute is one of peace.

And again we have a question.
The Sultan who reigns,
why hast thou come forth,
that we should eat the sinews?
God granted to us,
us three (sons of) Ishhak,
if we do not make trouble with thee,
thee, O Sultan,
that thou shouldst not bring com-
plaint against us.

II. GERAR, in *g*.

The singer's tribe has been severely looted, and he demands justice.

Somali.

Ma⁸ sidi gelòga,
o guluf mel ku darèmei,
yan gam'í wai habèn.
Sidi àrka iyo gòsha,

English.

Like the bustard,
who has seen an enemy somewhere,
I cannot sleep at night.
Like the lion and lioness,

¹ The Potential tense is often used in songs for the Indicative.

² This literally means, "nothing can be found to be given for it," i.e. no price.

³ names for camels.

⁴ lit. "is thought," an idiom meaning "is like." Cf. *la bida* in Yibir, q.v.

⁵ i.e. have the poor parts of the animal to eat.

⁶ i.e. Habr Gerhajis, Habr Awal, Habr Toljale, the three Ishhak tribes.

⁷ for *inanad sàlo naga yèdìn*.

⁸ appears to be frequently used in songs without necessarily asking a question, especially in introducing similes.

o gábnihi laga làyei,
gurhan ma igu bôte.

Sidi Gòdir irmán,
o élmihì ka ghàlen,
garti mau ulule.

Sidi gànleh shishèyei,
tollkei ma iss ugu géftei.

Ma sidi nin gabôbei,
o nàgu, gunyo ka dîbei,

ku geshiyèya hhumàtei,
yan ugu hantamèya.

Wehher gèrida jòga,
ma gèl annu lahain,
e gúdub nogu mághana,
O hághi so gudbiya¹.

Nabsi² wa ma ghabôbei,
herna³ wa ma gúdan,
Gùli wa wáhh ma môgi,
gòbina⁴ wa wárranta.

Gèlan manta hàino,
hènya godonkòda,
iyo wagérki wádana,
hádano gudídin
lábadiha an góine,
mia no gáraten⁵?

whose young have been slain,
I would make much clamour.

Like Godir, when with milk,
whose young have been slaughtered,
I would groan for justice.

Like enemies apart,
my tribe is divided among itself.

Like an old man,
whose wives, for whom he paid
much,
have grown bad and lazy,
I am angry at it.

For the lives that were taken,
camels that were ours,
whose fine has not been paid us,
O bring out the "diya."

Fortune has not grown old,
and law is everlasting,
God is all-knowing,
and the high-born have the news.

Let us have the camels to-day,
their genitals,
and heart,
?
let us cut both,
do you decide for us?

¹ The price of a man's life is 100 camels, whether it takes place in a tribal fight, or raid, or in a private affair: this is the Arabic "diya," or Somali "hagh."

² Nasib.

³ Somali custom.

⁴ gentry, or well born, opposed to tribes of doubtful origin, Esa, Gadabursi, Hawiya, and outcasts.

⁵ The general meaning of this stanza is clear, but l. 27 I cannot translate.

III. GERAR, in *gh* and *g*.*To my Bay Pony.**Somali.**English.*

Hamar O, ghorohhdàdo !

O Hamar, your beauty !

Hamar O, garadàdo !

O Hamar, your strength !

Hamar O, guwidàdo !

O Hamar, your size !

Hamar O, ghofalkàgo !

O Hamar, your obedience !

Hamar O, gadankàgo !

O Hamar, your price !

Hamar O, ghorohhdàdo !

O Hamar, your beauty !

ghaili¹ dōf laga kénei,

a cloth brought from over the sea,

iyo ghánfirka Híndi,

and Indian raiment,

gh labkan ku árkei,

things which I look at,

gésuhugu dīnta².

(and) die of astonishment.

Hamar O, guwidàdo !

O Hamar, your size !

ghàridi Milmilad³

{ as a camel which has grown very fat

rati⁴ ghaib ugu nàhhai

{ on the sand of Milmil,

ghorigi Berberád

{ as a ship at the pier of Berberah,

markab, ghaid u sugaya,

{ waiting for orders,

ghun u jòga, miya⁵.

stands fast.

Hamar O, garadàdo !

O Hamar, your strength !

ghalimali libahh,

as a black-maned lion,

iyo saryen ghortu u ba'dei,

and a bull oryx with broad neck,

iyo wiyil ghorah, miya.

and a bull rhinoceros.

Hamar O, ghofalkàgo !

O Hamar, your obedience !

suryadan kaga ràbto,

the path which I desire

ghálbigu ka gárta,

your heart understands,

gelafdidka hàwen,

as a dutiful wife,

iyo wàyel haj u ghóbtei,

and an elder gone on a pilgrimage,

an iss ku ghónsan, miya.

without grumbling.

Hamar O, gadankàgu !

O Hamar, your price !

¹ a bright tartan cloth, most worn by Dolbohantas.² for *gesaha ugu dīnta*, lit. I die of astonishment at the thing I look at.³ Milmil, in S.W. Somaliland.⁴ Dolbohanta for "camel."⁵ This word like *ma* is often used in similes. Perhaps it is only "eh?"

gholidán la halèlo
marna gás ka ma hóio¹.
Ma gasànad Sirkálku²
ghaib u só ballàgha?

(from) the tribe I fight with,
never can enemy take (you) away.
Can the Sirkal!
who scatters his money so lavishly?

IV. GERAR, in *d*.

The singer tries to persuade two tribes to make peace.

Somali.

Wa innagi dán wadágta³,
iyo iss ku dōlad ahain,
jini yu ídin dúfsan.
War, tollo, inna⁴ daya!

Mel e ghailo dalúntei,
ma nàgo urleh la dòhhai⁵,
o gùriihi dab la rùbei,
an dùnyo so dakhdaghàghin,
bal dugèda hissàba⁶,
wahh ku daida halkàsa.
War, tollo, inna daya!

Wayelka ya dad aslahha,
dalintàse ka dida.
Bal da'danahai, dai,
bal dórkan talináyo,
iyo dawodèda hissàbo,
wahh ku daida hálkana.
O war, tollo, inna daya!

English.

We are all of one salt,
and under one government,
a spirit entices you to evil.
Ye tribes, desist!

The place you raised your shout,
like women with child ripped up,
whose homes are burned with fire,
who have no property to move,
O think how old it is,
consider somewhat there.
Ye tribes, desist!

The elders settle the affairs of a
people,
but the young men disobey.
See then, how old am I,
how fairly I will decide,
and weigh the case,
consider somewhat here too.
O ye tribes, desist!

¹ Among the Somalis, a mare, a well and a woman belong to the tribe, and cannot be parted with without the consent of the tribe. Hence the singer here says "No one can take you from our tribe."

² refers to British Officer.

³ *la wadago* take meat together. The 3rd sing. is used, just as the 3rd sing. of a verb is used after a pronoun with *ba*, e.g. *Idinka ba shakheineya*.

⁴ or *naga*, is often used in such expressions, without necessarily referring to "us."

⁵ A custom fairly common among the Somalis until recently. The Mullah has often practised it on his raids against the Ishhak.

⁶ i.e. it is so long since it occurred.

Matàni la dagùghei',
 iyo fardi ghad ku dulbèlei,
 iyo dèbilihi la kabhàyei,
 gàshan kun² la darèyei,
 ma dimòne wahhas,
 o tollimòno ka dòrne,
 o sàmir bannu³ dèdallei,
 wahh ku daida halkasna.
 O war, tollo, naga daya !

Hadi tána la dído,
 o laga dórto 'olládda,
 ánnana⁴ wa dírirra,
 'ollo, ha inna dhùlin !

V. GERAR, in *g*.

Somali.

Nefka gádada wèinleh
 amàntis garan màyo
 Ma Haud⁴ gèdaleh ba?
 'Erku o gálab hore
 gabdankisa, miya ?
 Libahh mel fòg ka gùhha
 gabnihisi, miya ?
 Gèla, Gèdo⁵ iyo Làn⁵
 gànihisu, miya ?
 Ana, Gèd⁶ iyo Hohhad⁷,
 gerarkeigu, miya ?
 Afartisi gundod
 dulka ugu gára'a,
 ma sidi gábad wein,
 o geyankèda⁸ la siyei,

The wells are shut down,
 and the horses are sore-backed,
 and the camels are driven off,
 milk is drawn on to shields,
 we must not forget that,
 and must choose to be of one tribe,
 and wish for peace,
 consider somewhat there too.
 O ye tribes, desist !

If this is refused,
 and enmity preferred,
 we too must fight,
 ye armies, do not attack us !

To my Pony.

English.

My broad-chested beast,
 how to praise him I know not.
 Like grass-covered Haud ?
 } Like the pattering
 } rain from last evening's sky ?
 } Like the cubs of a
 } lion roaring afar ?
 } Like the foals of the
 } camels, Gedo and Lan ?
 } Like my own song
 } of Ged and Hohhad ?
 His four hoofs
 clatter over the ground,
 like a grown girl,
 who has been given her husband,

¹ lit. covered with stones. Wells out of use are shut up by their owners, by covering them with wood and stones.

² upon. This means that there is only enough to fill the hollow of a shield.

³ refers to "we, the singer's people," and not to the others. The pronoun *innagi* in line 1 includes the people addressed.

⁴ The district S.W. of the Nogal Valley.

⁵ Names of camels.

⁶ The spring winds. (Hagar.)

⁷ The summer wind. (Karif.)

⁸ means the "betrothed."

o gùyo¹ wein lagu ðibeĩ,
 ðarka ti gana'leh,
 iyo gárbasárka harĩdah,
 iyo gàshali huwàtei,
 o gor ga'lidka haðkèda,
 ninkiyò gamà'san,
 gàsinka u sita
 o kabihi gaðda lo'ada²,
 gara'ésa miya?

and has received great flocks,
 who, with most costly robe,
 and silken raiment,
 and dress, has clothed herself,
 and at the time of mid-day shadows,
 to her sleeping husband,
 brings his food,
 as with the shoes of cow's hide
 she clatters?

VI. GERAR, in s.

Somali.

Faraskeigu soyan,
 midabkàgu ma sô kan 'ád ba?
 Sifahàgu guyédna
 ma sagàl gù jir ba?
 Ma sidi nin sirkàlah?
 Intan ku salàhho,
 sankarkàga tùra,
 golahan salèbeya,
 o sahárka ka idlèya,
 an gèdo kugu saya.
 Halki sènyo ku sófto,
 ádigo wáhh ku sèma³,
 o sèma iga ríd mahai,
 sunka ká de'b'in mayo.
 Wàhha ha i la sula'an,
 o salogiga ghunyar⁴.

To my Pony.

English.

My fine horse,
 your colour, is it not white?
 Your manners and age
 are they not nine years?
 Are you not like a gentleman?
 As I groom you,
 I throw away the dirt,
 I clean the stable,
 and remove the dung,
 while I put down grass for you.
 Where camels graze,
 with you I must attack,
 and until I get my share,
 I will not loosen girths.
 Do not prance with me,
 and neigh softly.

VII. GERAR, in h.

A Raiding Song.

Somali.

Idinku baneyál⁵,
 banan idinku baneyál,

English.

Have ye, over plains and plains,
 over (countless) plains,

¹ i.e. the dowry.

² The women's shoes are not fastened by a strap at the heel, and, being just as heavy as the men's, make a great clatter in walking. The best shoes are of cow's hide.

³ touch, but here the meaning is "loot."

⁴ This is the meaning given me by the author, but I cannot explain it.

⁵ An intensive form of the plural.

Illahh bèididi haïsta,	whose richness belongs to God,
dùlan mau bùlaten ?	gone out to war ?
Barbar ma iss ka gúrten ?	Have ye assembled the young men ?
Badô ¹ mau ghóbsoten ?	Have ye caught Bado ?
Bustihi ² iyo shalka ³ ma Badô	Have ye put on Bado the blanket
huwisen ?	and trappings ?
Rakábka birtaah sulka mau	Have ye put the toe in the stirrup
barkisen ⁴ ?	iron ?
Yassin ⁵ maugu bahhden ?	Have ye made your prayers ?
Butiyihi 'ollku jehhai,	Where the enemy cut the ground,
iyo búdulki ma héshen ?	have ye found the tracks ?
Ísago ka balawaya,	While he is talking,
banán maugu takten ?	have ye taken to the plain ?
Wílal, Ebba badbádshei,	Boys, enriched by God,
dabka mau bilbúshen ?	have ye prepared the fire ?
Sibràr 'anaha bokha ⁶ ,	A skin of curdled milk,
iyo habènkana barúrta,	and fat for to-night,
ma barùra 'untèn ?	have ye eaten fat ?

VIII. GERAR, in *b*.*On the Raising of the Tribal Horse, 1903⁷.**Somali.**English.*

Gerar wa bogholal,	Songs are in hundreds,
wa badwein iyo môjad,	like the great sea and waves,
wa babürki sidisa.	like the ships.
Ninki an badinahain	The man who is not full of them,
bèrka wa ka ghálaha.	his bowels are cut out.
Babir mai mákhashen ?	Do ye hear my song ?
Hadi gàsò lo bilàbo,	If companies are collected,
o Burao lagu tontòmo ⁸ ,	and hailed to Burao,

¹ Name of a horse.² is the hairy skin placed over the saddle.³ is the woollen trappings on headstall and breast-plate (*sita'*).⁴ With the Somalis, as with other African horsemen, the stirrup iron is small, and only the big toe is inserted.⁵ The Prophet.⁶ Curdled milk and melted sheep's tail fat are the usual supplies taken by a Somali on a raid.⁷ This and the next two were made by my sais, or groom, on the occasion of the raising of mounted native levies for the operations against the Mullah, 1902-4.⁸ from "tomtom" drum.

wilal bërka Ishhàkah,
adunkòda badna,
an ku berkadsádahain¹,
ayan Sirkál Basha ka ra'i.

sons of Ishhak's loins,
of great wealth,
who are not weak-hearted,
I will follow the Sirkal Pasha.

IX. GERAR, in *b*.

Leaving Burao before Jidballi.

Somali.

Innagu Burao jògna,
ma jawáhta illàlo²?
War, bulàli³ jadèr, O,
so'od beinnaga⁴ jòga.
Jiryal affeyei,
iyo sun b'e'id laga jehhai⁵,
aya iss ku jidei bilàwa.
Wa jehhád⁶ tégeya,
aya jid aròryo,
illa⁷ jidáneya.
Anna 'ss ku jàd⁸ nókhona.

English.

We wait at Burao,
has the scout brought answer?
Lo, wiry dun,
the time to march is upon us.
I have sharpened spears,
and cut a thong from an oryx,
I have tied on a dagger.
I go on a crusade,
and start in the early morning,
in order to hasten.
We are of the same mettle.

X. GERAR, in *b*.

The Object of Fighting is Loot⁹.

Somali.

In kastàda bareiso,
o ghasirádi bokhosho,
la'agteidi bakshishleh,
iyo hadan bür¹⁰ na la sinin,
ama gèla Badwein bada leigu
'eriyin,

English.

However many you kill,
and cut their pay,
my bakshish money,
if it is not given us in heaps,
or the camels at Badwein if they are
not looted for me,

¹ I do not know the derivation or correct form of the word in this line, but the meaning was explained as I have given it.

² scout, spy.

³ dun-coloured pony.

⁴ ba innaga.

⁵ Oryx hide is the strongest in Somaliland.

⁶ Being an ignorant man, he did not realise the meaning of this word, or he would not have used it in referring to a campaign against fellow Mohammedans.

⁷ in la.

⁸ is the Hindustani word.

⁹ The Somalis, even our so-called friendly and protected tribes, have no compunction in saying that they will not join our army unless we promise them loot, in the shape of camels. It is also implied here that money is of little consequence compared to camels—an important fact to remember in dealing with these people.

¹⁰ mountain. Here equals "piles of money."

inan forska ¹ u bòdo,	that I join the force,
wa hal an bihhihainin,	is a thing of no value,
Sirkal bèrka u sheg.	let the Sirkal remember in his heart.

XI. GABEI², in *d*.

*Lament on the Invasion and Raids of the Mullah,
Mohammed Abdallah, 1900—1904.*

Da'da³ gabeiga watan⁴ beriaha dába'ei dígéya,
Forget the holy song I formerly laid down,

Hadba anigu o dayei ya dári tídahhai,
Now I myself too have ceased from what people sang,

An dubeyo wa ki beriaha igu dahhsonei.
And from what came to me to sing before.

An ku d'odo, Somàli yan hādalka deínahain,
Let me speak out, and if Somalis cease not their chatter,

Dabòlki an ku rido, hedoda an dáboka gud sàro.
Let me put on the lid, and cover up the dish.

Digti hālei dahhdiga ka ma gam'in, dá'kirka an ka'ei,
All last night my heart could not sleep, in the morning I arose,

Derewishtu wa ti ka tími degalodoiyo,
There were the Dervishes come from their homes,

Darùdki⁵ wàgi hore yei dabin oghòlen,
Darud first had laid his snare,

Dabadedna wa ti lei yími dágahhan Idòro⁶,
And afterwards he was come to the land of Idoro,

Daregháda⁷ iyo wa ti guben, òinti Nébiga dab ku shiden,
There were the priests' schools burned, the faith of the Prophet set fire to,

¹ Adopted from the English.

² I have given as literal a translation of these "Gabeis" as I can, but in some cases where I am not able to explain how the meaning is arrived at, I have given the meaning derived from a colloquial paraphrase by the author.

³ 1—5. Old songs do not suit the present days of strife,
Now keep quiet unless you wish me to stop.

⁴ And later l. 7, *wa ti*, cf. § 289.

⁵ Name of the Somali tribes, including Dolbohanta, Ogaden, etc., i.e. the tribes of the Mullah.

⁶ A name for Ishhak.

⁷ *Daregho* is a school where young men learn their religion, or are trained for priesthood. The chief schools are at u. Sheikh, Hargeisa; the u. Sheikh one is that referred to here.

Dabuna da'ei iyo dūnida nafōdei,
 And he carried off loot and laid waste the earth,
 Dadku da'ei, agōnti dulmiya¹, derisādu layei,
 He robbed the people, injured the orphan, slew the neighbours.
 Dubki² iyo shalādkī, arladdi lagu doāfei,
 Their headcovering and chant, as they tramp over the ground,
 Sidi dānab ku da'ei, rērihi digoda lo rēbei.
 Fell like lightning and thunder, our homes were left as dung.
 Ebbo, adi ya dayēnah, an duri ku moghēne,
 O Father, thou art everlasting, and all knowing,
 Dalki adaha laba nin³ ya dāsaddu tūnei,
 Two sides have clamoured for portions of the land,
 Rabo, kala dabāl eida madhar leiss la dōneya.
 O God, separate the armies which seek one another.

XII. GABEI, in *m*.

My future Wife.

An malēyo tan⁴ mäge wa madahhāda Gulēdo.
 It is in my mind that she whom I would marry is the (daughter of) the
 head of the Guleds.
 Marrin⁵ 'as weiyei, o ga'amo wa majēno rōbah,
 She is pink, and her hands are like drops of rain,
 Kub malāsan ba lehdahai, mārōdi wa sōhhei,
 Her ankles are round, her skirt is pleated,
 Talāboda mägug o ma rīdei, wa miyīrisei.
 Her steps are not those of a fool, she walks daintily.
 Malaëk sameis an farsāmo, lagu ma nāgin⁶.
 She is after the fashion of an angel, a virgin full of skill,
⁷Wēli melod jogtana maārag, ku maana moghēne.
 Never yet have I seen the place of your abode, nor have I any knowledge
 of you.

¹ Orphans are ordered to be specially protected by the Koran.

² The white cloth they tie over their heads as a badge.

³ The Mullah's people and the British Government.

⁴ *ti an*.

⁵ pink colour, or light copper, the favourite colour among Somalis.

⁶ From *nāg* woman.

⁷ The singer now addresses the lady.

Halun¹ ba mirtídaha ghálbigu ka muradsidei,
Last night, for half the night, in my heart I dreamed of you.

Marrwein hoyoda wahhannu sìn Mur² ai rèrato³,
We will give your aged mother a loading camel,

Walálkana hámar maidan ban màlin ho odáne⁴.
And to your brother one day I may present a pure bay pony.

Mos ban u jebin ábaha, Mùra⁵ iyo Hèmaleh⁶,
I will divide a host of camels with your father.

An majàlis wada ghadónne, midayóda kàli.
Let us all take our places, come to my people.

XIII. GABEI, in *d*.

To Dahab.

Dirahh hórte, Guban⁶ o lei dilei, dúkha la hayàmei.
In the spring time, Guban is dead, the people have taken the road.

Ninki òdàno kakhàyo banan dauga so ghóbeya,
He who leads water-camels, takes the road to the plain.

Dukhan⁵ iyo Ogaz⁵ ó ðalei, derig la danshòdo,
Dukhan and Ogaz have foaled, and are proud with repletion.

Wa derèjo labadèni o ghollad 'ss kú ðarei,
Here is honour for both of us, who meet in one room,

Unsiga ad nagu dadisida. Dàhab O, no kàli!
While you sprinkle scent over us. O Dahab, come!

Wahhad dònito wa laga héleya, Dàhab O, no kàli!
Whatever you wish will be given you, O Dahab, come!

Dùd⁷ annu nahai la ma horèyo, Dàhab O, no kàli!
Our tribe is second to none, O Dahab, come!

Ákhal dòrah mod leiss kú ðarei, galino daba jòga,
Our goods are laid together in a beautiful house, the camels wait behind,

Durba hòlaha naga ghobo, Dàhab O, no kàli!
Now take our flocks, O Dahab, come!

¹ Halei un.

² Name of a camel.

³ That she may load.

⁴ Ho take, hold. Oñò say.

⁵ Names of camels.

⁶ The maritime plain from which the tribes wander into the more fertile Ogo, or southern slopes of the Golis range, at this time of year.

⁷ Forest. Here used for tribe.

Wan lei dilei, barùr laga dala'ei,
A ram is slaughtered, fat is cooked,

Aulaláda diran, manfa'an wada dònnonne, Dàhab O, no kàli!
The ribs are ready, let us all find food, O Dahab, come!

Sar dabòlan¹, hes² danoneiyo, wèso darandèra,
Put on the shield-cloth, hang up spear and white flask,

Tusbah dòrah, iyo wátahhan³ hore u si dadsha.
Lovely rosary and prayer-mat lay in front.

Kabo dàlinka leisska òiga e malmo lagu dàlo,
In weariness one lays aside shoes in which one toils by day,

Iyo ga'anta ka ma dèin karo jèdal dubandábeyo.
And the whip which the hand cannot cease from flicking.

Daf hadan, la so yidi gogolaha darah gogoshùwa,
Enter now then, the beds are ready spread,

Dalaghdalagh⁴ u so'odkad hubki dib u lo lafiyotei⁵.
? ? ? ?

XIV. HES, in *g*.

Dumar O, kunka kabaha, kulliga ðamánta,
Ye women, the thousand generations, all and everyone,

Sikakaäga ákhal gudi u garáne.
Of your ancestors within the house we may know.

Illahed goisi u garane. Rāga gèlisi u garáne.
The partitions of a room we may know. We may know the men's camels.

Gāshan ma ghādan, ma ku gāban taghānin?
Do you carry a shield, do you know how to lower it?

Marka rāg iss u só galo, ma gangāni taghānin?
When men compete, do you know how to draw a bow?

Gāranka afki u badan iyo gojoda lugtaah mōyi.
The great clamour from your lips, and the dancing of your feet, I know not.

Gembi kāleh ma gāratan?
Is there any other art you understand?

¹ Somalis keep their shields white and new by covering them with a white cloth.

² Name of a particular kind of spear.

³ *Watahh* is the tree from which the bark is taken for tanning leather.

⁴ Wagging of the head.

⁵ Walk.

THE DIALECTS OF THE OUTCAST TRIBES, YIBIR AND MIDGAN.

1. ACCOUNT OF THE TWO TRIBES.

These two tribes are called by Somalis *Sab*, or outcast, being considered of low origin and not descended from *Darùd* or *Ishhak* (cf. Appendix III). For this reason Somalis will not mix with them or intermarry.

The *Yibirs* are said to be sorcerers, and to have prophetic powers and the power of cursing. They live by begging, but especially by the levy of a tax on Somalis, at a marriage or the birth of a child, according to an old tradition told in a story which is given here in *Yibir* dialect.

The *Midgans* are by nature hunters or trappers, and live largely by the meat of game they can kill in the jungle. They are also employed by Somalis to work for them, in return for which they receive occasional payment, in food or otherwise, and protection, from their employer. This work consists in fetching wood, drawing water, and digging and cleaning wells.

Both tribes also work in leather, tanning hides, and making leather ornaments, saddles, shoes, etc.

They profess to be Mohammedans like pure Somalis, but the *Midgans* are very lax in their religion, being unclean in the matter of the meat they eat. Many, however, are comparatively civilised and are strict on this point.

Neither *Yibir* nor *Midgan* have any definite tract of land, like the numerous tribes of Somali. They are scattered as wanderers over the whole country, the *Midgans* either attaching themselves to some Somali tribe as *abban*, or living upon them as robbers and thieves.

Each tribe has its own dialect, which has hitherto been kept as a solemn secret from the rest of the world. They still insist upon

secrecy from Somalis, and made me promise not to divulge to their hereditary enemies what they were quite willing to explain to the white man.

I, therefore, rely upon any who may read this not to disclose to any Somali what I have been allowed to write down for the benefit of the *Sirkal*, but if any other officer of an enquiring disposition wishes to pursue the subject, he should be acquainted with the Somali language, which all the *Sab* know, and discuss these things with one of them.

2. OBSERVATIONS ON THE DIALECTS.

(Quoted by kind permission of the Editor of the *Journal of the African Society*¹.)

Yibirs and Midgans are both very jealous of their languages, and keep them a secret from other Somalis, although all speak the common language of the country, namely Somali. There are, I believe, no Somalis who know anything of either dialect, and while I was having my interviews with these people, they were very particular not to allow any Somali within hearing, our conversations having to be carried on in the latter's language.

Here let me repeat that I was put on my word by both peoples not to divulge anything to a Somali, but was allowed to write it down for the use of British officers, their vanity being evidently touched by the idea of a white man wanting to study their language.

Therefore I must ask any who may read this and who may sojourn in the country, *not to repeat what I give here to any Somali, not of Yibir or Midgan birth.*

A. W. Schleicher is the only author who refers to an unknown language (*Die Somali-Sprache*, p. x) :

“Unter den Somali leben mehrere Helotenvölker, von denen die Midgan, Tomal und Yibber die bekanntesten sind. Nur die Yibber scheinen eine eigene Sprache zu besitzen, die sie unter sich sprechen.”

“Bestimmte Angaben darüber konnte ich nicht erhalten, dem Somali sind die Yibber ein Greuel. Nach Hussein versteht kein Somali ihre Sprache, doch verstehen die Yibber alle das Somali.”

¹ *Journal of the African Society*, No. xiii., October, 1904.

The construction of the languages, I find, is the same as that of the Somali tongue, as spoken all over the country, and by all tribes ; that is to say, they are identical in, and the same rules apply in

- (1) Syntax,
- (2) Conjugation of Verbs,
- (3) Inflections of Nouns and Adjectives,
- (4) Methods of forming Derivative Verbs, etc.

In the matter of Vocabulary, the following parts of speech are practically altogether different from Somali and from one another, though a very few roots are common to all three :

- (1) Nouns,
- (2) Adjectives,
- (3) Verbs,
- and consequently, (4) Adverbs,
- (5) Conjunctions,
- (6) Prepositions.

On the other hand such parts of speech as,

- (1) Definite Article,
- (2) Demonstrative Pronoun,
- (3) Possessive Pronoun,
- (4) all Particles,

are common to all three, and have the same forms and constructions.

The Yibir vocabulary is fairly complete, though poorer than Somali. The Midgan, on the other hand, is extremely deficient. A large number of words have therefore to do duty for several meanings each, according to the context.

Examples,

Yibir.

dalanga	any animal or bird (an appropriate epithet or description being required for each individual kind).
agar	thing, stuff, food, etc.
à	"rer," family, home, flocks, belongings, baggage, property.
awas	any vegetable, tree, grass, wood.
iftin	light, sun (fem.), moon (masc.), star, rupee, silver, money (as adjective = bright or white).

ilahn	fire, gun (as adjective = hot).
mid	exist, be, stop, stand.
tomàla	anything hard, hill, stone (adjective = hard).
lawo	water, rain, river, year.

Midgan.

hangagùri	any wild beast (carnivore).
nas	thing, place, time, town, person, self.
ghoribirro	wood, and anything made of wood, tree, bow, shaft of spear, thorn.
gôsad	iron, knife, any iron tool.
iftimowa	sun, light, day.
gomosímo	water, rain, river.
ghan	<i>good</i> , large, heavy, far, white, hot, full.
neghatal	<i>bad</i> , small, light, near, black, cold, empty.
makabùr	stone, hill, money, rupee (as adjective = hard).

I could not find any other native words to translate the various meanings given opposite each of the above.

Where special definition is required, some paraphrase is used. Yibirs have no special names for animals, but use such expressions as the following :

dálangihi khábarki ghandldsan	hyaena (lit. the animal with plenty of noise).
dálangihi walahúmo ku dashlya	oryx (lit. the animal having spears).

Midgans describe the lion and leopard as, **hangagùri ghan**, and **hangagùri neghatal**, respectively.

The following are good examples of other paraphrases required by the languages :

my father	(Mid.) alowihi i so finfinshei .
	(Yib.) goriedki i jagh'idei , literally, the man who begat me.
yesterday	(Mid.) iftimowihi tegèdei .
	(Yib.) iftinti tegèdei , literally, the light that has gone.
to-morrow	(Mid.) iftimowihi so tegèdeya , literally, the light that is coming.

I am hungry (Mid.) **guratáda wa neghatal**, literally, my belly is small (or thin).

look at (Mid.) **indókholaha ku yef**.

(Yib.) **ainta ku yef**, literally, turn your eyes to.

pray (Mid.) **gomosímo 'ss ku dahhdahhbi**, literally, buy yourself with water.

(N.B. Does this refer to the Mohammedan ablutions before praying, or has it any connexion with Christian baptism?)

evening (Mid.) **iftimowihi neghatála himirki so 'idbeya**, literally, the small light, as night comes on.

Notice that these phrases are similar in each language. A number of words too are common to both :

Examples,

tegèd	go
shan	go
bakhrin	head
gànad	hand
yal	foot
rùf, rôf	dead
yef	turn
ku dashi	have

On perusing a grammar of Galla, I found that no special connexion exists, as I had expected, between that language and either of these dialects. Where any similarity occurs, it pervades the Somali as well.

Many Somali roots are found in these dialects, with additional syllables.

<i>Somali.</i>	<i>Yibir.</i>	<i>Midgan.</i>	<i>English.</i>
if	iftin	iftimowa	light
indo (plur.)	ain	indókhol	eye
makhal	makhalei	makhashimei	hear
ghori		ghoribirro	wood
af		afjaghin	mouth
san		saneg	nose
kol	kulhi		time
laf	lafil	lafeiti	bone
lugh (voice)	laghdan (tongue)	laghowa (throat)	
	lagh (talk)		

The inflexions of Yibir and Midgan are the same as those of the Somali, and not of the Galla language, as, for instance, agreement of Adjectives, inflexions of Verbs, plurals of Nouns, and the Definite articles.

Derivative words are formed in the same way as in Somali ;

Examples,

'idib } go.	so 'idib } come.	'idbi } take.	so 'idbi } bring.
shan }	so shan }	shamei }	so shamei }
fed (Y) wish. }	kul (M) give. }	'id (Y) give. }	
fedo look for. }	kusho eat, or drink. }	'ido eat, or drink. }	
indókhol (M) }	indókholei }	indokoleisi }	shew.
ain (Y) }	aimeai }	aimeisi }	
makhali (Y) }	makhalei }	makhaleido }	listen
makhashin (M) }	makhashimef }	makhashimeiso }	to.
ghàn (M) }	ghàmi }	ghàmo }	be good.
yifan (Y) }	yifnei }	yifno }	

The following Midgan root **ragh**, or **raghahh**, is interesting as regards its various derivatives and constructions, which are all purely Somali.

raghahh	act, do, fix
raghahhi mayo	I will not do it
'ss ka raghahh	sit down (set yourself)
so raghahh	wait
ku raghahh	catch, hold
faras ku raghahh	ride a horse
raghahhi	set, place, make
gôsad ku raghahhi	cut (with a knife)
raghahho	take to yourself, marry
raghahhsan	be, exist, lie, live
ku raghahhsan	wish, have
raghahhsanei	give
raghahhsano	look for
ku raghahhsano	like, love

In an account, given me by a Midgan, of the traditional origin of his tribe, it was suggested that this language was invented

by the Midgans' ancestors in the jungle as a secret code. This may possibly be the case, judging from the following examples :

Midgan.

hand	farolaháto	from Somali	{ faro laho	fingers possess
arrow	degoyir	"	{ dego yir	ears small
breast	fèdolaháto	"	fèdo	ribs
Clarke's gazelle } (Dibatag) }	diboder	"	{ dibo der	tail long
oryx	gesoder	"	geso	horns
sheep	yiryiro	"	{ yeryer of yer	plur. form small
skin	gaðlaháto	"	gað	beard
liver	madôbiyo	"	{ madô biyo	black water

3. EXAMPLES OF SENTENCES AND CONVERSATION IN YIBIR AND MIDGAN.

Midgan.

higge ka so 'idibtei ?
 alowa ba so 'idbeya.
 naskas i kul.
 goriedki ghànsana.
 àwinti ghànsaneid.
 higgan so duhur.
 'ss ka sir.
 higga 'ss ka raghahhsano.
 gararàti shar bannu dagnei.
 gedgharomed maku raghahhsana ?
 raghahhi mayo.
 jalmihi gomosímodi u 'idbi.
 hajiaha gòsad ku raghahhi.
 bulalki so shanshamei.
 gomosímo ma raghahhsanid.
 makabúrta u sharei.
 ma dukhanta ?
 ma sharodei ?
 ghoribirro ghàn i kul.
 baghdankini i dagsi.
 nasina i kulin.
 guratáda wa neghatal.
 wahhan kushodo i kul.
 iftimòwihi tegèdei alowihi i so
 finfinshei la rùfiyei.
 iftimòwihi neghatála bodowyashi
 higgan u shamei.

English.

where have you come from ?
 a Midgan is coming.
 give me that.
 the good man.
 the good woman.
 come here.
 go away.
 stay there.
 we saw many horses.
 are there trees there ?
 I will not do it.
 take the camels to water.
 cut the rope.
 light the fire.
 there is no water.
 give more money.
 are you sick ?
 are you well ?
 give me a big stick.
 teach me your language.
 give me nothing.
 my stomach is empty.
 give me something to eat.
 yesterday my father was killed.
 in the evening take the burden
 camels over there.

*Midgan.**English.*

iftimòwaha ban Àji sukhodin ku dukhei.	to-day I shot a Somali with a bow.
àwintaida yagòlka raghahhsanta.	my wife is at home.
moyodi higga erifogad iss dukhesa wa shar.	the people fighting over there are many.
wa mahai naskas bakhrinka ku raghahhsan?	what is that on your head?
yagòlkaigi makabùrta ghàn ku raghahhsana.	my house is by the big hill.
naskakan hangagùri shar ku midsha, hajla bannu ku raghahhadna.	here are many animals, we catch them in traps.
hadad hangagùri ghàn i indo-kholeisíneso, makabùr shar ban ku kuleya.	if you shew me a lion, I will give you much money.
himirki jalmahaiga laga la sirei.	in the night my camels were looted.
iftimòwihi tegèdeya, kulhidi moyodi jalmihi higga erifogad u shameineso, an rùfino moyoda, o jalmihi la sirno.	to-morrow, when the people take the camels over there, let us kill the people, and go off with the camels.

*Yibir.**English.*

ma yafántahai?	are you well?
ma yáfnan ba? so yáfnan miya?	is it peace?
higge u bidbideínesa?	where are you going?
higga dugageigu wa tegèdeya.	I myself am going there.
mahhad fédesa?	what do you want?
wahhan ka fédeya inad kalwein i 'ida.	I want you to give me a tobe.
humággi mahhad 'ídatan?	what do you eat at night?
gòdibki ma 'ídatan?	do you drink milk?
dugagàgu wèli ma awèlisatei?	are you married yet?
wèli ma awèlisan.	I am not married yet.
dérigas mahhad ku awèlein?	what are you going to do with that?

Yibir.

jalmo ma ku dashisa ?
 ku ma dashiyo.
 alkhalilahagu wa inhíma ?
 wa ghàndid.
 áwaski yafneisiya, dálanga wa so
 bidbideineya.
 anghagi ad yiftimeisei ma so
 ganiden ?
 góriedkas ain ba rúfsan.
 derigi lagu angháksodo "huwad"
 ba la bida.
 khabar ghàndid ba lagu bida.
 mahha bakhreíneya ? ma lawo ?
 agarma ku midesa ?
 agar ku ma mideso.
 kulhímad bidbideinesa ?
 higge ka so tegèdei ?
 alkhal ku tegèdeya.
 mahhad u tegèdi weida ?
 goriedki ma mideya ?
 higgà darsad 'ss ka midi.
 ainta igu so yef.
 godib i so shimi.
 jalamada so shimiya.
 dálangaha bakhreíneya ágarma
 u fèdeya ?
 áda higgan midsiya.
 jalamada kabàrta ku midsiya.
 agartàda la tegèd.
 higgisa ha mideyo.
 khabarma awèleinesa ?
 wa lei rùfiyei.
 difadki iga bilehh.
 kalweinti humáksaneid yáfnan
 iss ugu shimí.
 ágarma aimeisei ?
 khabarma makhaleidanesei ?
 dérigas ma ku duhùresa ?
 ku ma duhùro.

English.

have you any camels ?
 I have none.
 how many are your horses ?
 they are many.
 make the zariba strong, a wild
 beast will come.
 have you caught the Mullah
 you were fighting ?
 that man is one-eyed.
 the thing one prays on is a
 "huwad."
 you are good at the language.
 what is that noise ? rain ?
 what is in there ?
 nothing is there.
 when are you going ?
 where have you come from ?
 I am riding a horse.
 why don't you go ?
 is the man here ?
 sit down at the back there.
 look this way.
 bring me some milk.
 bring the camels here.
 what does the animal making
 that noise want ?
 put the things down here.
 load up the camels.
 take your things away.
 (leave it alone.) let it be.
 what are you doing ? (abstract.)
 I am killed.
 cut the rope from me.
 fold up the blanket well.
 what did you see ?
 what did you hear ?
 do you understand that ?
 I do not understand.

*Yibir.**English.*

kulhída góriedka so tegèda, i so lagh.	when the man comes, tell me.
khábarkas 'ss ka ládishei.	never mind that. leave it alone.
ágar teidi wa ku midesa.	my things are there.
sáddehhi kúlhiód wa ku laghei.	I have told you three times.
wátahhadi darsad galabídi so tegèda.	come back to-morrow evening.
wátahho walba kulhídi iftinti so godista wa so tegèdena.	we will come every day at sunrise.
áni, yahaínyahh ba la bida.	it is big, small.
gamàghdà, gamaghdis ba la bida.	you are right, he is right.
hegha yu lakheya.	he is telling a lie.
khábar lagu awèleya, ma ku duhùresa ?	do you understand what is said to you ?
gorieddi yiftimeisa khábar yafan ma ka so tegèdeya ?	is there good news from the army ?
higgà wa lagu orèmei.	he was killed there.
khábarkas urshèn ba la bida.	that is bad news.
gorieddi almanki fèdatei ágar ma aimeisei ? ágar ghàndid bei aimeisei.	has the force found some stock ? they have found plenty.
higgi lo gùrei, almanki ma la ga baghèyei ?	was the force frightened away from where they went to ?
aihi darsad, awas ba aimeina yafan.	at the next village we find good grass.
ghorimada yafan dugagína awèleyei, lawihi laga tegèdo, deriíhi urshèna ma awelin.	your people made the good boats to cross the sea on, the bad ones they didn't make.
igu makhaleido, khábar an ku laghi.	listen to me, I will tell you a story.
wa ku makhaleidaneya, khábarkas i lagh.	I am listening, tell me that story.
higgas ugu orensanyahai.	it is torn there.
goried yafan ba lagu bida, khábarkagi i lagh, bidbidsin mayo.	you are a good man, say your say, I will not go against it.
ha bidin.	no. it is not.
waférka katowa ku ma dashìyo.	that knife is blunt.
hilaghamaha hadeidinan agar ka 'idin, ma yafna khábarkas.	if you do not give anything for the wives, it is not good.

Yibir.

fil iftin wa so doiýoneya.
 dérigan asuwan bu ku dashíya.
 lawihi darsad yu awèlisaneýa.
 derigi asuwanti jagh'idei dādo yu
 u 'ida iyo iftīmo.

altob yafan, tobánihi iftimod, iyo
 límihi gánadod o dādo yu u
 'idei, kulhídan ya ka fedeya.

jalmahaiga derigo ya ka almàmei.
 jalanka inhíman kaga doiýoda?
 hosi u biddidei.

Abiryaha walahumo awèleya.
 kabàrti horyadèdi kulhídi ad
 midesen, ya'unki ku la khab-
 reyei iyo dugagàgu deri yafan
 ba la bida.

dugagisu u yafan.
 tomàlaha aniga àdayadaushantei,
 lawo iyo awas yu u fedatei.
 dugageigu u shámeya, hadanan
 rufin.

goriedki jalmihi iyo dādodi fedtei,
 ma so tegèdeya?
 deriíhi anghàga ka daras tegèdei.

goried difada ya la gu bida.
 shanihi kulhiod wa anghaksona,
 saddehhi kulhiod wa humaggi,
 limihhi wa watahhádi.

dífadki jálanki u lagu awelefn
 jira.

dantashi seýadki lagu shimín jira.
 deriíhi yabar yifno o Anasioda
 'idin jirta, Hanfili ka so godisa.
 Anas ain rufsanei kulhina ma ku
 so godisei?

waferti humaksana lugu tegèjiyo.

English.

I am going to buy some rice.
 this one has a wife.

he will marry next year.
 to the girl's father he gives sheep
 and money.

he gave a good shield, 10 rupees
 and 20 sheep, now he is
 engaged.

that man looted my camels.
 how much do I pay for a camel?
 put it down below.

the Tomals make spears.
 the old man who spoke with you,
 when you went to the front of
 the house, and yourself are
 great men.

he is the senior.
 my "rer" has gone to that hill,
 for water and grazing.

I am going myself, in order not
 to die.

is the man coming who fetched
 the camels and sheep?

those who followed after the
 Mullah.

you are a gentleman.

we pray five times, three times
 at night, and twice by day.

the rope with which the camel
 is tied.

the vessel one puts ghi into.

Hanfili leaves alone people who
 give plenty to the Yibirs.

has a blind Yibir ever come to
 you?

the knife to cut the hair with.

MOHAMMED HANIF (ANCESTOR OF THE YIBIRS).

Kulhídi horimad anghàg ba lagu bidei¹. Hig bu midsha²,
 The time before a priest there was. Where he lives
 goried la ma midín jirin. Deriìhìni³ horimad, iyo deriìhi
 people with not to live used. Your people before, and the people
 angháksodei dehhdodi u midshei, limihi ya yiftimeyei. Deri
 (who) prayed (who) among them lived, both fought. A man
 yabar ghandídsan ya la bidei. Deriìhìni horimad ya u so
 of property plenty he was. Your people before to (him)
 godisei. "Awas no 'idbi," yei laghen. "Khábarke ku fedesan⁴?"
 came. "A herb to us bring," they said. "What reason for do you want(it)?"
 yu laghei. Kulhídas yu laghei, "Deriahan angháksoda yannu ku
 he said. Then they said, "These people (who) pray we with (it)
 rùfinena." Kulhídas yu laghei, "Wa iftimo ghandidah, idinku
 will kill." Then he said, "It is money plenty you
 i 'idi mahai⁵, awaskeiga idin 'idin mayo." Kulhídas yu
 to me give without, my herb to you give (I) will not." Then they
 goderówi iftimo iyo goderówi jalmo inhídas àwaski yei kaga
 a hundred rupees and a hundred camels so much the herb they for
 doiyòden. Kulhídas yu àwaski u sara 'idei⁶. Kulhídas ya deriìhi
 bought. Then he the herb to (them) gave. Then the people
 anghaksóneyei alman so fedten⁷. Kulhídasa yei deriìhìni horimad
 (who) prayed a raid went for. Then they your people before
 yei alman u so fedten. Kulhídas limihi goderówi o lawod⁸ yei
 they a raid on (them) went for. Then for two hundred years they
 hig midshei, o higgiu tegèdei ya aimein waiyen. Kulhídasa
 a place lived, and where they went (they) find could not. Then

¹ Think. *la bida* it is thought. This is used for "is" (Somali *wa*).

² Aorist, from *midso*.

³ Plur. *derio*. Here the narrator refers to the people of the person he was addressing (i.e. myself), whom he considers to be the same as the Gala. *deriìhi anghaksodei* means Moslems.

⁴ Somali: *mahhad ku dōnesan*?

⁵ Somali: *idinku i sin mahai* unless you give me.

⁶ Hand over. Somali *dib*.

⁷ Look for. (*wan fedta*.) Somali *dōno*. *alman fedo*, Somali *dūl*.

⁸ Water, rains, i.e. year.

deriithi anghaksóneyei higga ku rùfen. Kulhídas yei anghàgi the people (who) prayed there died, Then they the priest yabar yifmeíyen¹ anghàgi bu rùfei. Àdisi ya la alman. Weled property fought the priest he died. His home was looted. A boy yahaínyahh u u jagh'idei, ya higgi ka so godisei, weledki iyo small (whom) he begat, there from came, the boy and aferi kelemad hig midín jirei. Weledki Mohammed Hanif ba four others a place live used to. The boy Mohammed Hanif la bidei. Weledku kulhídas yu anghàg nokhdei, asuwàno yu was. The boy then he a priest became, women he difadín² jirei. Dugagìsu³ higga midsha o asuwàno difadsha², used to. (while) He there lives and women , anghàgi yifna ya u só shamei, Au-Bakhardli bu nokhdei. Kulhídas the priest great to (him) came, Au-Bakhardli he was. Then yu u laghei, "Khábarma higgo u midesa, o anghàg lagugu bída?" he said, "What there for do you live, and a priest for are?" Kulhídas bu laghei, "Dugagàgu ma iga anghaksántahai?" Then he said, "Yourself (are you) me than (more) holy?" Kulhidasu laghei, "Ka angháksanahai." Kulhídas yu u laghei, Then he said, "More holy I am." Then he said, "Khabarka ad iga anghaksántahai igu aimidsi." Kulhídasu "The reason you me than (more) holy are me to shew." Then he laghei, "Higgas an ka⁴ godisaya, ka godis dugagàgu." Kulhídasu said, "There I will penetrate, through go yourself." Then tomàlaha ànigah yu hosidisi ka godisei. Kulhídas ka godisei, that hill great he beneath it through went. Then (he) went through, o higgo u ku godisei, yu u laghei Au-Bakhardli, "Tomàlaha O, and there he in went, he to him said Au-Bakhardli, "O Hill, gan'id." Kulhídas tomàlihi 'ss ku godisei, kulhídas yu hig u seize." Then the hill together went, then he where he ka so godiso aimein wai. Tomàlaha dehhdisi yu ku rùfei out may come see could not. The hill in it he died

¹ This is not correctly given, but the sense is "They fought over the dead priest's property."

² Whether this means "marry," or "rape" is not clear. **difad** rope. There is one story that Mohammed Hanif was expelled by Sheik Ishhak because of his immorality.

³ Self, person. **dugagaiga** I myself.

⁴ Through, across.

anaghàgi. Anghàgi aiháyaga higgas u ku rùfei. Kulhídas ya the priest. The priest of our tribe there he died. Then

weldihi¹ u jagh'idei yu u laghei, "Augayo ada rùflyei, agar the boys he begat they said, "Our father you have killed, something no-ga² 'id." Anghàgi ba ku laghei, khabarkan kulhídasu to us for it give." The priest to (them) said, this word then he

u laghei, "Ma watahhádan gođerówi jalmo idin 'ida, mase said, "(Am I) to-day a hundred camels to you to give, or

weledki goried u jagh'ido yan ilbir idin ka sara 'ida? Sara-the son a Somali begets I a ewe to you for (him) am I to give? The

doshíska mian iftin idin ka sara 'ida?" Kulhídas ya weldihi marriage am I money to you for to give?" Then the boys

laghen, "Weledka ilbir noga sara 'id, saradoshíska iftin, said, "The boy a ewe to us for (him) give, the marriage money,

wéldahana³ ilbir. Inhídi ka darseisa inhída khabarka and the boys a ewe. That (which) follows (hereafter) so much for that

yannu ágarta ku 'idónena." Khabarkas yannu ágar ku we as the price for will receive." For that reason we a price

shansonna, Anàsyodáyadu. Kulhídi iftinta iyo ilbirta na lo take, we Yibirs. When the money and the ewe to us is

'ido, àwasyo yahaínyahh yannu u 'idna. Wannu u yabarónna. given, sticks small we to them give. We thus earn our living.

Àwas kelemad o ghandidah wa ku duhùrna. Derigi rùrùfeya Herbs other many (we) understood. The man (who) is sick

iyo derigi alman fedóneya, iyo derigi lagheya, "an and the man (who) is going on a raid, and the man (who) says, "let me

derigas ka ur behhénsanàdo," inhídas àwas lo 'ido yannu than that man be better," for that a herb to be given we

ku duhùrna. Deriga, annu u 'idna, iftimo ghandidah yu, know. That man, (to whom) we give, money plenty he,

kulhída u yifnàdo, no sara 'ida.

when he is successful, to us hands.

¹ Plur. weldo-hi.

² na u ka. Cf. ka siso pay for.

³ And.

YIBIR-ENGLISH AND MIDGAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

The following is a list of Yibir and Midgan words not used by other Somalis.

Words, such as Pronouns, Particles, etc., are not given, being common to all three dialects.

Nouns are recognised by the Definite Article which follows each noun, separated by a hyphen.

Examples,

ain-ti eye **bulal-ki** fire

In these examples, **ain** equals an eye, **bulal** equals a fire; "the eye," "the fire," would be, **ainti**, **bulalki**.

The suffixes, **-ki**, **-gi**, **-hi**, are masculine, **-ti**, **-di**, are feminine.

Abbreviations:

(Y)	Yibir dialect.
(M)	Midgan dialect.
(Y), (M)	common to both dialects.
v.i.	intransitive verb.
v.t.	transitive verb.
a.	adjective.

The Arabic letter ain (ع) is represented by ' , ghain is represented by **gh**, **kh**.

ǰ represents the "cerebral d," which at the beginning or end of a word sounds like *d*, but in the middle of a word is more like *r*.

This letter in Yibir is pronounced usually like **dh**.

à-di (pl. àö-hi) (Y), family, "rer," possessions	ágar-ti (Y), thing, any concrete object; <i>agarma ku midesa</i> ? what is there ?
abàbo-di (M), Plateau Gazelle, "dero"	aghtul v.t. (M), strike, hit
Àbir-ki (Y), Tomal (an outcast tribe that work in iron)	aimei v.t. (Y), see, find, understand
adeisímo-di (M), milk	aimeisi v.t. (Y), shew, teach
áferi-hi (Y), four	ain-ti (Y), eye; <i>ainta ku yef</i> , turn your eye (i.e. look)
afjaghin-ti (M), mouth	aintoli-hi (Y), lie, untruth

Aiyifan-ti (Y), Gala
Àji-gi (M), Somali
albákhar-ti (Y), cow
aléliso-di (M), bird, bustard
alkhail-ki, -shi (Y), horse
alman v.t. (Y), rob, loot
alman-ki (Y), army, enemy
alówa-hi (M), man (esp. ref. to Midgan man), not used in referring to a Somali; *alowihi i so finfinshei*, my father
altob-ki (Y), shield
amèdo-di (Y), goats
anaduh-r-ki (M), elephant
Anas-ki (Y), Yibir
Anasnimeiso v.i., collect the "samanyo"
Anasnfmo-di, the "samanyo" paid to Yibirs
anghàg-gi (Y), priest, "mullah"
anghakso v.i. (Y), pray
àni-gi (Y), largeness; *ani ba la bida*, it is large
àniah a. (Y), great
ànisan a. (Y), complete, correct, new
asahan-ti (M), woman
'asèr-ti (Y), (M), dates (*'asèro-hi*)
'asèrah a. (Y), red (sometimes *asè-raäh* is used)
'asèro-hi (Y), blood
'asówa-hi (M), blood
'assi (M), lynx
asuwan-ti (Y) wife
au-gi (Y), ancestor
Awashona-hi (Y), God
áwas-ki (Y), vegetable, grass, tree, bush, zariba, grass mat; *awaski aldibo*, the sacred tree of the Yibirs, used as a charm.
aweilei v.t. (Y), do, make, construct, cause
aweiliso v.t. (Y), do for yourself, marry
àwin-ti (M), woman
babàto-di (M), cloth, dress

baghdan, v.i. (M), talk, tell, say; *nasker bad baghdamesa?* what are you saying?
baghdan-ki (M), talk, speech, language
bagh v. (Y), (M), be in fear
baghei v.t. (Y), (M), frighten
bagho v.i. (Y), (M), be afraid; *ka bagho*, be afraid of
bakhar-ti (M), cow
bakhrei v.i. (Y), make a noise (? inverted "khabrei")
bakhrin-ki (Y), (M), head
balkhalo-hi (M), lesser bustard
baneisin-ki (M), in front, before
behhensan a. (Y), useful
bið v.t. (Y), think; *khabarma biðesa?* what do you think?
 The Passive, formed by "la," is used for the verb "be"—
lei bida, I am; *lagu bida*, thou art; he, she is; you, they are; *la na bida*, we are—
 e.g. *derigas ba la bida*, that is; *Anas ba lei bida*, I am a Yibir; *ha biðin* (don't think) it is not. No
bidbidei v. (Y), go
bidbidsei v.t. (Y), make to go, send away, throw away
bikho-di (M), "Dik-dik"
bilehh v.t. (Y), cut
bi'yuso v.t. (Y), like, be pleased
boba'un v.t. (M), gulp down
bodówa-hi (M), camel
bùf-ki (M), donkey
bulal-ki (M), fire, smoke, fire-arm
bulalyei, v.t. (M), burn, heat, forge
bulbul-ki (Y), stick
bulbul-shi (Y), whip
buskulohh-i (Y), butter
dabo-'ad (M), Haartebeest
daðo-di (Y), sheep
dag v.t. (M), see, understand
dahir-ki (M), fat, ghi
dahhbi v.t. (M), buy

dalanga-hi (Y), animal
damòmei v.t. (M), dig, excavate
damomya-hi (M), inside
dangharei v.t. (Y), refuse
dáras-ti (Y), behind, tail; *ka dáras tegèd*, follow behind
d'arowa-hi (Y), breast, udder
darsád (Y), afterwards, subsequent; *watahhádi darsád*, to-morrow
darsei v.i. (Y), be behind, be left; *kulhádi ka darseisa*, afterwards
dashi v.t. (Y) (M), have, possess (always used with "ku"); *inhima ku dashisa*? how many have you?
degayir (M), arrow
degíg-gi (M), donkey
deri- -gi, -di (Y), finger; one person; *derigas*, that one; *deri ba ku mideya*, there is one
derigab (Y), loins
diboder (M), Clarke's Gazelle
dibyalin-ki (M), behind, after, back, tail (of an animal); *dibyalin u raghahh*, stand back; *dibyalin-keigi*, behind me
dífad-ki (Y), rope, snare
dikhràrin-ki (M), hide (of game), prayer-mat
dilin-ti (M), "Dero"
doïyo v.t. (Y), buy
dubadyo-hi (Y), jugular vessels
dugag-gi (Y), person, people, self; *dugaggeigu*, I myself
duhur v.i. (M), travel, go
ku duhur v.t. (Y), understand; *ku duhuri mayo*, I don't understand
dujo v.t. (M), leave; *'ss ka dujo*, let be, never mind
duk v.t. (M), strike, kill
dukhan v.i. (M), be sick, be afraid; be empty, be broken
dukhumei v. (M), ? fear
dul-shi (Y), end of backbone
dusàr-ki (M), elephant

dussi (M), leopard

erifogád-ki (M), distance, in time or space, year, country; *higgar erifogád*, away over there; *erifogádkini*, your country; *erifogádkitegèdei*, last year

falèd-di (M), rupee
fardaho-hi (?M), finger
farolaháto-hi (M), hand, arm
fed v.t. (Y), wish, want, mean; *mahhad felesa*? what do you want?
fedo v.t. (Y), look for
fèdolahato-di (M), breast
fidsin-ki (Y), camel's hump
fil-shi (Y), grain; *f. tomàlaah*, jowaree; *f. iftin*, rice
fin, or **finfin** v.t. (M), give birth to, beget
finso v.i. (M), be born

ga'alo v.t. (M), like
gabar-ti (M), water-flask
gabis-ki (M), shield
gaðlaháto-di (M), camel-skin, shield
galabí-di (Y), evening
gamágh-i (Y), truth. Yes. All right
gamàgho v.i. (Y), be right, correct, true
gànad-di (Y), (M), hand
 In counting, "gànad" refers to the five fingers and means five:
limihi gànadod, ten; *saddehhi gànadod*, fifteen; *aferi gànadod*, twenty
gànaddi yafneid, right hand;
g. yahainyahheid, left hand
gana'id v.t. (Y), catch
gararàti-gi (M), horse
gedgharoméd-ki (M), tree
geryal-ki (M), Waller's Gazelle
gesoder-ki } (M), Oryx
gesolahato-di }

gir-ki (M), ostrich
godanahh-i (M), chest
goderowi-gi (Y), rosary, hundred
godib-ki (Y), milk
godis v.i. (Y), come, arise, come up,
 begin ; *kulhiddi iftinti so godista*,
 at sunrise ; *humaggi wa godisa*,
 the night is coming on
golof-ti (M), woman
gomosimo-di (M), water, river, rain
gonya-hi (M), inside, within
gorád-ki (M), cup
gorbei v.t. (Y), pray for, beg
goried-di (Y), (M) (plur. of *goriedki*),
 people, men
goried-ki (Y), (M), man, person
gôsad-di (M), iron, metal, any metal
 article, knife ; *gôsad ku raghahhi*,
 cut (with a knife)
gosin-ki (M), "Aoul," Soemering's
 Gazelle
gujin-ki (Y), meat
gurató-di (M), stomach, belly ; *gura-
 iádi wa neghatal*, I am hungry
ghàmi v.t. (M), make good, im-
 prove
ghàmo v.i. (M), be good
ghàn a. (M), large, long, good (far,
 fat, hot, white)
ghàndiǎ-ki (Y), plenty
ghàndidah a. (Y), many ; *jalmihi
 ghandiǎkaäh*, the many camels.
ghàndidei v.t. (Y), increase
ghànsan a. (M), good
ghodahh-di (Y), tin for ghi
ghoribirro-di (M), wood, bush, thorn,
 branch of a tree, any article of
 wood, bow
ghorin-ki (Y), plate, dish, ship

hajla-hi (M), rope, string, trap
haman-ti (Y), bird
Hanan-ki (M), Yibir
Handud-ki (M), Tomal
Hanfli (Y), Hanfli, the Yibirs'
 ancestress, spirit

hangagùri-gi (M), animal, any wild
 animal
hainyalisan a. (Y), mad
halyokho-di (Y), iron
hawar-ti (Y), backbone
hedig-gi (M), ostrich
hekho-di (Y), lie, untruth
hig-gi (Y), (M), place ; *higgan*,
 here ; *higgà*, there ; *higge?* *higma?*
 where?
hilghan-ki (Y), see '*ilaghan*
himir-ki (M), night
horimad (Y), before, (time)
horyad-di (Y), before, in front, (place)
horyalin-ki (M), before, in front
hosyad-di (Y), below, beneath
hosyalin-ki (M), beneath, below
humag-gi (Y), night
humaksan a. (Y), black ; *humak-
 sano bakhrinka*, hair
humbur-ki (M), fox
hur-ki (M), quiver (of arrows)
huwad-ki (Y), prayer-mat
huwlya-hi (M), sheep-skin

'id v.t. (Y) (M), give
'idbi v.t. (M), make to go, take,
 lead ; *so 'idbi*, bring
'idib v.i. (M), go ; *so 'idib*, come
'ido v.t. (Y) (M), eat, drink
idon v.i. (M), go away, run away
iftimo-hi (Y), money (plur. of
iftin)
iftimówa-hi (M), light, sun, day ;
iftimówaha, to-day ; *i. tegèdei*,
 yesterday ; *i. so tegèdeya*, to-
 morrow ; *i. neghatal*, twilight ;
i. n. himirki so'idbeya, evening
iftin a. (Y), white, bright
iftin-ki (Y), moon
iftin-ti (Y), sun, light, rupee
'ilaghan-ti or **-ki** (Y), child, daugh-
 ter, or son
ilabh-hi (Y), fire, fire-arm ; *ilabh
 awèlei*, light the fire
ilan-ti (Y), leg

ilbir-ki (M), limb
ilbir-ti (Y), ewe
ildighán-ti (Y), bow
ilowa-hi (Y), ram
imil-ki (Y), male camel
imitirahh-i (M), wing
indóholeisi v.t. (M), point out, shew
indókhól-shi (M), eye; *indókhólaha*
u yef, look
indókhólei v.t. (M), look at
inhí-di (Y), (M), quantity: *inhídas*,
 so much; *inhíma?* how much?
 how many?
irso v.i. (M), remain still
jagafaho-di (M), shoe, sandal (plur.
jagafahoïn-ki)
jagh'id v.t. (Y), give birth to, beget;
goriedki i jagh'idei, my father
jagha-hi (Y), child
jalan-ti (Y), (M), she-camel (plur.
jalmó-hi)
jankho-hi (Y), kid, young goat
jehhar-ki (M), buck-Aoul
jimikh-hi (M), caracal-cat
jindar-ki (Y), ox, bull
kabár-ti (Y), house, loading-mat,
 load of a camel
kalahéd-ki (Y), half
kalwein-ti (Y), cloth, clothing; *k.*
humaksan, blanket
kalweinaléh-di (Y), town, Berberah
katowa-hi (Y), mouth, edge; *wa-*
fērka katowa ku ma dash'yo,
 that knife has no edge
kelema a. (Y), other
khábar v.i. (Y), talk, speak
khábar-ki (Y), speech, talk, lan-
 guage, news; *khábarkas 'ss ka*
ladishei, stop that talk; *khábar-*
kas, like that; *khábarmad fedesa?*
 what do you want?
khábrei v.i. (Y), talk, speak
kub'en-ti (Y), tail, tail-fat.
kul v.t. (M), give

kul-ki (M), half
kulhi-di (Y), time; *kulhídan*, now;
kulhídas, then; *kulhíma?* when?
saddehhi kulhíod, three times;
kulhídi horyad, before
kulun, v.i. (M), be sick
kunoli-hi (Y), heart
kushan-ki (Y), ring
kusho, v.t. (M), eat, drink
labodin-ki (Y), (M), body, belly
ladishei (Y), leave; *'ss ka ladishei*,
 cease, let be
lafeiti-di (M), bone
lafil-shi (Y), breastbone
lagh v.i. (Y), speak, tell, say
laghdam-ki (Y), tongue
laghowa-hi (M), tongue, throat
lamdi (see *limdi*)
langharoméd-ki (M), rice
lawo-hi (Y), water, rain, river, year;
lawihi darsad, next year
lawodaur-ki (Y), water-bottle
(lawo-hi (M), milk)
lig-gi (M), buck-Gerenuk
limdi v.i. (Y), (M), sleep, lie down;
(infin. limdiyi)
limi-hi (Y), two
ludub-ki (M), penis
madôbiyo-hi (M), liver
madôkushan-ki (Y), anna
madôla-hi (M), tortoise
maghùr v.t. (Y), lend
makabùr a. (M), hard
makabùr-ti (M), hill, stone, pebble,
 money
makabur-ti (Y), tortoise
makhalei v.t. (Y), hear
makhaleido v.t. (Y), listen
makhali-di (Y), ear
makhashin-ti (M), ear
makhashimei v.t. (M), hear
makhashimeiso v.i. (M), listen
manahho-di (Y), food
marùbo-hi (M), plate, dish

- mid** v.i. (Y), be, exist, be present, remain, be alive; *agarma ku midesa?* what is there?
- mid** (Y), (M), go; *'ss ka mid*, go away; *so mid*, come; *la mid*, go with, accompany
- midsan** v.i. (M), sit down
- midsi** v.t. (Y), bring
- midso** v.i. (Y), remain, live; *ya'uniki ku jagh'idei ma midsha?* is your father alive?
- mirdolo-hi** (Y), penis
- mirgin-ki** (M), plant, vegetable
- moyo-di** (M), people
- mukhtaren-ki** (Y), needle, bodkin
- nafél-ki** (Y), hunger
- nafél** v.i. (Y), be hungry
- nàni-gi** (Y), bag, satchel carried by Yibirs
- nas-ki** (M), thing, place, time, self
- neghatal** a. (M), small, bad, few (thin, near, black, light)
- nirokh-i** (Y), loins
- omas-ki** (M), bird
- oran-ki** (M), guinea-fowl
- orèmi** v.t. (M), kill
- orèn** v.i. (M), die
- orènsan** v.i. (M), be sick; (Y), be spoilt, torn
- raghahh** v.i. (M), act, do, catch; *raghahhi mayo*, I will not do it; *'ss ka raghahh*, sit down; *so raghahh*, come here, wait here; *ku raghahh*, catch, hold; *gararàti ku raghahh*, ride a horse
- raghahhi** v.t. (M), set, place, make; *gôsad ku raghahhi*, cut (with a knife); *'ss ka raghahhi*, put it down there
- raghahho** v.t. (M), take for yourself, marry
- raghahhsán** v.i. (M), be, exist, lie, live, think; *ku raghahhsán*, have, want
- raghahhsánei** v.t. (M), give
- raghahhsáno** v.t. (M), look for; *ku raghahsáno*, like
- rèmi** v.t. (M), hit, strike
- rer-ki** (M), feather
- rihin-ki** (M), meat
- rîsh-ki** (M), ostrich-feather
- robsahan-ki** (Y), (M), loins
- rôf** v.i. (M), die
- rôf-ki** (M), corpse
- rûf** v.i. (Y), die
- rûfi** v.t. (Y), (M), kill
- rûfsan** v.i. (M), be sick, be poor
- saddehh-hi** (Y), three
- sakhsakh** v.t. (Y), slay, cut the throat
- saneg-gi** (Y), nose
- salôlad-ki, -di** (M), goat
- saradoshis-ki** (Y), bridegroom, wedding
- sareyagh-i** (M), ostrich
- saryen-ki** (M), bull-Oryx
- sedah-hi** (M), legs of ostrich
- seyad-di** (Y), (M), oil, ghi
- shamei** v.t. (Y), (M), take, lead; *so shamei*, bring
- shan** v.i. (Y), (M), go; *so shan*, come
- shani-hi** (Y), five
- shanshamei** v.t. (M), kindle (a fire)
- shanso** v.t. (Y), take for yourself, keep, put in, carry
- shar** a. (M), many, plenty
- sharei** v.t. (M), increase
- sharo** v.i. (M) be well
- shàshin-ki** (M), things, property, belongings
- shimi** v.t. (M), take; *u shimi*, put in
- shirfei-di** (Y), small quantity
- siftihh** a. (Y), fat
- siftihh-di** (Y), fat

- sil-sil-ki** (M), hair (usu. plur. *sil-silodi*)
simokh-i (Y), leg
sir v.i. (M), go
so'oto-di (M), foot, track
sukhodin-ti (M), bow

tabantab v.i. (M), walk, pass, wander
tàgi v.t. (Y), fasten
tahab v.i. (M), move, go; *mahhad u so tahabtei?* what have you come for?
takhalámo-di (Y), song
tegèd v.i. (Y), (M), go; *so tegèd*, come; *alkhail ku tegèd*, ride a horse; *ka tegèd*, cross
tegèji v.t. (Y), send
tingir-ki (M), Waller's Gazelle
tiro-gi (Y), liver
tobani-hi (Y), ten
tomàla a. (Y), hard
tomàla-hi (Y), stone, hill

ukub-ki (M), ram
ulud-di (M), upper arm
'unimadô- (M), cheetah
'unukh-hi (Y), throat
uro-di or ur-ti (Y), stomach
'urshèn a. (Y), bad
'urshèn v.i. (M), smell
'urshèn-ti (M), nose
'urshèni v.t. (M), smell
'urshèni-gi v.t. (M), anything that smells, dung, etc.
uskin-ki (M), leg

wafer-ki (M), spear
 „ (Y), knife, tooth
walahun-ki (Y), spear
Waran-ti (Y), Midgan
watahhó-di (Y), day; *watahhádan*, to-day; *watahhádi darsad*, to-morrow
wawa'li-gi (M), dog
weled-ki (Y), boy

yabar-ki (Y), goods, wealth, property
yabaro v.i. (Y), make your living, earn your living
Yadur-ki (Y), Midgan
yafán or yifan a. (Y), good, right hand
yafnan-ti (Y), goodness, health, Peace
yafneisi v.t. (Y), make good
yafneisiso v.t. (Y), arrange for yourself
yafno v.i. (Y), be good
yagól-ki (M), “herio,” camel-mat, hut
yahafnyahh a. (Y), small, bad
yahan-ti (Y), two annas
yahhab-ti (M), herd of Oryx
yal-shi (Y), (M), leg
yaliyifo-hi (Y), shoes
ya'un-ki, -ti (Y), old man, woman; *ya'unti jagh'idei*, mother
yef v.t. (Y), (M), turn
yiftimei v.i. (Y), fight
yihan-ki, ti (M), man, woman
yiryiro-hi (M), sheep and goats

COMPARATIVE VOCABULARY OF SOMALI, YIBIR, AND MIDGAN.

<i>English</i>	<i>Somali</i>	<i>Yibir</i>	<i>Midgan</i>
after	dambe	darsad	dibyalin
amulet	ghordas-ki	godahheid-ki	
animal	báhal-ki	dálanga-hi	hangagùri-gi
anna	gambo-di	madókushan-ki	
2 annas	antìn-ti	yahan-ti	
arm	ga'an-ti	gànad-di	farolahàto-di
army	'oll-ki	alman-ki	moyo-di
arrow	fallàd-di	wafèro yahainyahh	degoyir
backbone	adahh-hi	hawar-ti	
bad	hhun	'urshèn	neghatal
be	aho	la bid (be thought)	
bear (beget)	dal	jagh'id	finfin
before	hor	horyad	horyalin
beg	bari	gorbei	
belly	leg-gi	labodin-ki	labodin-ki
beneath	hòs	hosyad	hosyalin
bird	shimbir-ti	haman-ti	alèliso-di
black	madò	humáksan	neghatal
blood	dig-gi	'asèro-hi	'asowa-hi
bone	laf-ti	lafil-shi	lafeiti-di
bow	ghànso-di	ildighan-ti	sukhodin-ti
boy	wil-ki	weled-ki	janakh-i
bradawl	muda-'i	mukhtaren-ki	
breast	lab-ti	d'arowa-hi	fèdolahàto-di
bring	{ la kàli so kahhai	so shimi	so shamei so 'idbi
burden (of camel)	ákhal-ki	kabàr-ti	yagòl-ki
bush	{ gèd-ki dir-ti	awas-ki	ghoribirro-di
buy	ibso	doïyo	dahhbi
butter	bur'ad-di	buskulohh-i	

<i>English</i>	<i>Somali</i>	<i>Yibir</i>	<i>Midgan</i>
camel (female)	hal-shi	jalan-ti	jalan-ti
„ (male)	aur-ki	{ imil-ki jalan-ki	bodowa-hi
carry	sido	shanso	raghahho
catch	ghobo	gana'ido	ku raghahho
chest	sakâr-ki		godanahh-i
child	ínan	ilaghan	janakh
cloth	maro-di	kalwein-ti	babàto-di
come	{ imo kàli	so tegèd (etc.) godis	si idib (etc.)
corpse	miyid-di	rùf-ki	rôf-ki
country	bilâd-ki	hig-gi	erifogâd-ki
cow	{ lo'-di sa'-i	albakhar-ti	bakhar-ti
cup	dâsad-di		gorad-di
cut	goi	bilehh	gôsad ku raghahh
dates	timir-ti	'aser-ti	{ 'assi-di nahhad-ki
day	màlin-ti	watahho-di	iftimowa-hi
die	bakhti	rùf	rôf
dig	ghod		damòmei
do	{ fal ghobo samei	aweilei	raghahh
dog	eĩ-gi		wawa'li-gi
donkey	dabeir-ki	himár-ki	{ buf-ki degig-gi
drink	'ab	'ido	kusho
dung	hâr-ki		'urshèni-gi
ear	deg-ti	makhali-di	makhashin-ti
eat	'un	'ido	kusho
evening	galâb-ti	galabi-di	iftimowihi negh- atala
ewe	sabein-ti	ilbir-ti	
eye	il-shi (pl. indo)	ain-ti	indókhôl-shi
far	fòg		erifogâd-ki
fat (n.)	haid-di	{ sahol-shi siftihh-di	dahir-ki
tail-fat	badi-di	kubi'in-ti	
fear	bagho	bagho	dukhun
feather	bâl-ki		rèr-ki

<i>English</i>	<i>Somali</i>	<i>Yibir</i>	<i>Midgan</i>
fight	dirir	yiftimei	iss duk
finger	far-ti	deri-gi	
fire (and fire-arm)	dab-ki	ilohh-i	bulal-ki
flask	weiso-di	lawodaur-ki	gabar-ti
food	sor-ti	manaho-di	
foot	ag-ti	ilan-ti	so'oto-di
forge (v.)	tun	awèlei	bulalvei
frighten	baji	baghi	dukhumei
Gala	Gàlo-hi	Aiyifan-ti	
ghi	subukh-i	seyad-di	dahir-ki
girl	gabañ-di	ilaghan-ti	janakh-di
give	sì	'id	kul
go	{ tag so'o	{ tegèd shan bidbidei	{ tegèd shan 'idib tahab sir
goat (female)	ri-di	amèd-di	salôlad-di
„ (male)	orgi-gi	yahan-ki	salôlad-ki
God	Ilahh	Awashona	
good	wanâksan	yafan, yifan	ghânsan
goodness		yifnan-ti	
be good	samo	yifno	ghâmo
make good	(samei = make)	yifneisi	ghâmi
grass	aus-ki	awas-ki	aus-ki
great	wein	àniah	ghàn
greatness	weinan-ti	ùni-gi	
gulp	lukho		boba'un
hair	timo-hi	humâksano-hi	silsilo-di
half	bañ-ki	kalaheñ-ki	kul-ki
hand	ga'an-ti	gànad-di	{ gànad-di farolahàto-di
hard	adag	tomàlâh	makabùr
have	{ hai laho	ku dashì	ku dashì ku raghahhsan
head	madah-hi	bakhrin-ki	bakhrin-ki
hear	makhal	makhalei	makhashimeì
heart	wadna-hi	kunòli-hi	
hill	bùr-ti	tomàla-hi	makabùr-ti
horse	fâras-ki	alkhail-ki	{ gararàti-gi fùf-ki
house	âkhal-ki	kabàr-ti	yagòl-ki

<i>English</i>	<i>Somali</i>	<i>Yibir</i>	<i>Midgan</i>
how many ?	ìmisa ?	inhíma ?	inhíma ?
hot	kulul	ilohh	
hump (of camel)	kurus-ki	fidsin-ki	
hunger	gajo-di	nafèl-ki	
be hungry	gajo	nafelo	guratádi wa negh-atál
improve	wanaji	yifneisi	ghàmi
increase	{ badi kordi	ghandiðei	sharei
iron	bir-ti	halyokho-di	gòsad-di
jowaree	harùd-ki	fil tomàlah	
jugular vessels	tuman-ki	dubadyo-hi	
kid	makhal-shi	jagho-di	janakh-di
kill	dil	rùfi	{ rôfi orèmi
kindle (fire)	shid	aweilei	shanshamei
knife	bilawa-hi	wafèr-ki	gòsad-di
language	{ af-ki hádal-ki	khabar-ki	afjaghin-ki baghdan-ki
leave	da	ladishei	dujo
leg	lug-ti	yal-shi	{ yal-shi uskin-ki
lend	amahho	maghùr	
lie (untruth)	bein-ti	{ hekho-di aintoli-di	
lie down	jif	midi	limdi
light (n.)	if-ki	iftin-ki	iftimòwa-hi
like (v.)	ja'alaho	ku bi'yuso	ku raghahhsano
limb	lahhad-ki		ilbir-ki
listen	ðegeiso	makhaleido	makhashimeiso
liver	bèr-ki	tiro-gi	madóbiyo-hi
loins	sarar-ki	{ robsahan-ki nirokh-i	robsahan-ki
long	ðer	ðer	ghàn
look	eg	ainta ku yef	indokholei
look for	dòno	feido	raghahhsano
loot	{ da' la tag	alman	la sir
mad	wallan	hainyalisan	
madness	wallo-di	hainyali-di	
make	samei	aweilei	raghhah
man	nin-ki	goried-ki	goried-ki

<i>English</i>	<i>Somali</i>	<i>Yibir</i>	<i>Midgan</i>
old man	odei-gi	ya'un-ki	yahan-ki
many	badan	ghandidah	shar
marriage	aros-ki	saradoshis-ki	
marry	gürso	aweiliso	raghahho
mat (prayer-mat)	masàla-hi	huwad-ki	dikhràrin-ki
meat	hilib-ki	gujin-ki	rihin-ki
Midgan	Midgàn-ki	{ Yadur-ki } Waran-ti	Alowa-hi
milk	'ano-hi	gòdib-ki	adeisímo-di
money	la'ag-ti	iftimo-hi	makabùr-ti
moon	dayah-hi	iftin-ki	iftimowihi himirka
mouth	af-ki	katowa-hi	afjaghin-ti
near	ag-ti		gonia-hi
new	'usub	ànisan	
news	war-ki	khabar-ki	baghdan-ki
night	habèn-ki	humag-gi	himir-ki
no	maaha, maya	ha bidin	
nose	san-ki	saneg-gi	'urshèn-ti
other	kāleh	keleamad	
ox	dibi-gi	jindar-ki	
peace	nabad	yifnan-ti	
people	{ dad-ki } rāg-i	moyo-di goried-di	moyo-di
person	ghof-ki	deri-gi	
penis	gus-ki	mirdolo-hi	ludub-ki
place	hag-gi	hig-gi	{ hig-gi } nas-ki
plant (n.)	beir-ti	awas-ki	mirgin-ki
plate	hedo-di	ghorin-ki	maruba-hi
plenty	in badan	ghandiḍ-ki	shar
pluck	rif		rug
pray	tuko	anghakso	
put down	ḍig	midsi	raghahhi
put in	rid	shanso	
quantity	in-ti	inhi-di	inhi-di
quiver	gaboyo-di		hur-ki
rain	ròb-ki	lawo-hi	gomosímo-di
ram	wan-ki	ilowa-hi	ukub-ki
red	'as	'asèrah	
refuse	ḍid	dangharei	
remain	jòg	midi	raghahhsan
"rer" (family)	rèr-ki	à-di (pl. ayo-hi)	yagòl-ki

<i>English</i>	<i>Somali</i>	<i>Yibir</i>	<i>Midgan</i>
rice	baris-ki	fil iftin	langharomed-ki
right hand	midig-ti	yifan	
ring	katun-ki	kushan-ki	
rope	hadig-gi	difad-ki	hajia-hi
rosary	tusbah-hi	goderowi-gi	alel-ki
run	orod	bidbid	
rupee	rubiad	iftin-ti	falèd-di
sandal	kab-ti	yaliyifo-hi	jagaflaho-di
satchel	ghandi-gi	nàni-gi	
say	odo	(see "speak")	
see	arag	aimei	dag
send	{ dir kahhai	{ shimi tegèji bidbidsei	shamei
sheep	adi-gi	dado-di	yeryero-hi
shew	tus	aimidsi	{ indokholeisi dagsi
shield	gashan-ki	altob-ki	{ gabis-ki gadlahàto-di huwiya-hi
sheep skin	harag-gi		
ship	markab-ki	ghorin-ki	
skin	sàn-ti	huwad-ki	gadlahàto-di
slaughter	ghal	sakhsakh	
sleep	sehho	limdi	alemdi
small	yer	yahainyakh	neghatál
smell (v. t.)	'urso		'urshèni
smell (v. i.)	'ur		'urshèn
Somali	Somàli-di	Goried-ki	Àji-gi
song	gabei-gi	takalámo-di	
speak	hadal	{ khabrei lagh	baghdan
stick	ùl-shi	bulbul-shi	ghoribirro-di
still (be)	jògso		irso
stomach	alòl-shi	ùro-di	gurato-di
stone	dagahh-i	tomàla-hi	makabùr-ti
strike	ku dufo		{ aghtul duk
sun	ghorahh-di	iftin-ti	iftimowa-hi
tail	dibo-di	daras-ti	dibyalin-ki
take	ghad	shimi	shamei
take to yourself	ghado	shanso	shanso
then	kolkas	kulhidas	naskas
there	haggà	higgà	{ higgà naskà

<i>English</i>	<i>Somali</i>	<i>Yibir</i>	<i>Midgan</i>
thigh	bôdo-di	derighab-ki	
thing	wahh-i	{ deri-gi (indef.) agar-ti (concrete) khabar-ki (abstract)	nas-ki
(possessions)	ghalab-ki	à-di	shàshin-ki
think	mòd	bìd	
throat	hungùri-gi	unukh-i	lakhowa-hi
time	kol-ki (etc.)	kulhi-di	nas-ki (?)
tobacco	bùri-gi	madô-di	
to-day	manta	watahhádan	iftimowaha
Tomal	Tomal-ki	Àbir-ki	Handud-ki
to-morrow	berri	watahhádi darsad	iftimowihi so tegè- deya
tongue	arab-ti	laghdam-ki	laghowa-hi
tooth	ilig-gi	wafer-ki	
town	magàlo-di	kalweinàleh-di	nas-ki (?)
track	ràd-ki		so'oto-di
trap	dabin-ti		hajla-hi
tree	gèd-ki	awas-ki	gèdgharoméd-ki
truth	run-ti	ghamagh-di	ghàn
turn	rug	yef	yef
under	hos	hosyad	hosyalin
understand	garo	ku duhur	dag
useful	fi'an	behhensan	
water	biyo-hi	lawo-hi	gomosímo-di
when	kolki	kulhídi	
when ?	gorma ?	kulhíma ?	
where	haggi	higgi	higgi
where ?	hagge ?	{ higge ? higma ?	{ higge ? higma ?
white	'ad	iftin	
whip	jèdal-ki	bulbul-ki	ghorin-ki
wing	bàl-ki		imitirahh-i
wish	dòn	fed	ku raghahhsan
woman	nàg-ti	asuwan-ti	{ awin-ti asahan-ti
	habàr-ti	ya'un-ti	{ yihan-ti golof-ti
wood	ghori-gi		ghoribirro-di
word	erei-gi	deri-gi	
year	gù-gi	lawo-hi	erifogad-ki
yesterday	shàlei	watahhádi horyad	iftimowihi tegèdei
Yibir	Yibir-ki	Anas-ki	Hanan-ki

NUMBERS.

<i>English</i>	<i>Somali</i>	<i>Yibir</i>	<i>Midgan</i>
one	mid	deri (=finger)	
two	laba	limihi	
three	sadehh	sadehhi	
four	afar	aferi	
five	shan	gànad (=hand)	
six	lehh	gànad iyo deri	
ten	toban	limihi gànadod, or tobanihi	
fifteen	shanyo-toban	sadehhi gànadod	
hundred	boghol	goderowi-gi (=rosary of 100 beads)	
thousand	kun	tobanihi goderowiyod	

The Midgans use the Yibir numbers up to ten.

NAMES OR DESCRIPTIONS OF WILD ANIMALS.

Caracal	jambèl		jimikh
Cheetah	harimad		'unimadô
Dikdik	sagàro	d.* yahainyahha awaski ka godisa	bikho
Elephant	maròdi		dusár
Fox	da'wo	d. dado 'ita	humbur
Gazelle, Clarke's	dibotag	d. darasti tegèja	dibodèr
„ Soemmering's	'aul	d. darasti iftimaleh	gosinki (buck) jehhar
„ Speke's	dèro	d. amèdo la hega	abàbo
„ Waller's	gerenùk	d. la bilehhoda	tingir geryal (buck) lig
Guinea-fowl	digirin		oran
Haartebeest	sig	d. albakharki	dabo'ad
Hyaena	waràba	d. khábarki ghandidsanleh	furat
Koodoo	aderyo		godir
Leopard	shabèl	d. amèdo 'ita	dussi
Lion	libahh	d. jalmo 'ita	hangagùri ghàn
Oryx	b'e'id	d. walahumo ku dashiya	{ gesoder gesolahato (buck) saryen
herd of Oryx			yahhab-ki
Ostrich	gorei halda		{ hedig gir sareyagh
O. feather	bàl		rish
Rhinoceros	wìyil		amadur
Tortoise	din	makabùr	madôla

* Note. d (in Yibir) represents *dálanga* animal.

INDEX.

The numbers refer to the sections.

- Ablative 159, 245
- Accents 3, 60, 214
- Accusative, *see* Object
- Adjective 69, 169
 - Inflections 75
 - Comparison 82, 172
 - Derivative 73
 - Adjective Nouns 15
 - Demonstrative, Possessive and Interrogative, *see* Suffixes
- Adverb 10, 44, 129, 130, 131, 137, *see* Particles
- Article
 - Indefinite 149
 - Definite (Suffix) 23, 28, 31, 32, 55, 63, 75, 150, 197
- "be" 142 (b), 143, 147
- bein** 201
- Concord 75, 164-168
- Conjunctions 10, 133, *see* Particles
- Consonants 7
- Coordinate sentences 127 (b), 252
- Dative 157
- Demonstrative
 - Adjective 23, 198
 - Pronoun 63, 199
- Euphony 6, 20, 25 (iii), 35, 87, 95, 97, 98, 104, 123, 186
- Existence 147
- Gender
 - Nouns 17
 - Linking Consonant 25, 26
 - Plurals 164, 165
- Interjections 134
- Interrogative
 - Adjective 23, 33, 202
 - Pronoun 65, 146, 202
 - Adverbs 131, 146
 - Sentences 145, 146
- Linking consonant 24, 31, 32, 34, 75; omission of, 27; with Plurals 164, 165
- la** 67, 118
- mahhan** etc. 58, 131, 194, 202
- mayo** 92
- Negative
 - Conjugation 91, 145, 230
 - of **aho** 112
 - Indefinite Pronouns 210
 - wah** 195
 - in Subordinate clauses 258
 - see* Particles
- Nominative, *see* Subject
- Nouns 10, 12
 - Abstract 15
 - Cases 43, 155
 - Gender 17, 164
 - Plural 34, 162

- Nouns
 used Adjectivally 160, 170
 used Adverbially 29, 152, 158
 Numerals 10, 46, 163, 168, 170, 178
- Object 44, 136, 156
- o**, Conjunctive Particle 127, 170, 254, 261
- Particles 9, 124, 236
 wa, **ba**, **ya** 54, 138, 171, 185
 ba with Negative 213
 wa Perfect Tense 220
 ma Negative 91, 145, 230
 ma Interrogative 93, 145
 Adverbial 236
 Prepositional 125, 236, 241
 Conjunctive 127, 144, 253
- Partitive Case 161, 208
- Passive 118
- Place 157, 158, *see* Adverbs
- Plural
 Nouns 34
 Pronouns 63
 Adjectives 76
 Gender and Concord of 164-168
- Possessive Case 45
 Adjective, *see* Suffixes
- Prepositions 10, 132, *see* Particles
- Pronouns
 Personal 10, 53, 183
 Demonstrative 63
 Emphatic 55, 229
 Indefinite 67, 204
 Interrogative 65, 146, 202
 Possessive 62, 198
 Reflexive 61, 196
 Relative 64, 259
- run** 201
- Salutations 135
- Similarity 177
- Subject 44, 53, 136, 141, 156
- Subordinate sentences 257
- Substantives 10, 11
- Suffixes 10, 22, 197
 Combination of 31, 198
 with numerals 47
 as Pronouns 62, 63, 65, 199
 -ah 73, 160
 -ed 73
 -la 48, 73
 -leh 73, 116, 160, 203
 -ma 66, 131, 202
 -na 127, 210
 -se 127
- Superlative 176
- Time 48, 130, 265
- Verbs 83, 211
 Adjectives 72, 108, 113
 Attributive 103, 122, 171
 Auxiliary 86, 214
 Causative 123
 Conjugations 89, 95
 Continuative Tenses 5, 86, 92, 96, 221, 222
 Intensive 120
 Moods and Tenses 211
 Nouns 15
 Negative form 91, 112, 231
 Persons 88, 228
 Reflexive 121
 aho 111, 147
 fadi 109, 148
 jòg 148
 jlr 85, 148, 214, 224
 imo 106
 laho 115, 148, 203, 214
 nokho 105, 148
 oò 106
 ogho 106
 oll 100, 148
 wah 117, 195, 274 (note)
- Vowels 3, 6
- wahhan** etc. 57, 192, 264, 288



PJ
2532
K57
1905

Kirk, John William Carnegie
A grammar of the Somali
language

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY
